

EXHIBIT 1

**IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE**

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES COR-)	
PORATION,)	
)	
Plaintiff,)	
)	
v.)	C.A. No. 1:16-cv-00122-LPS
)	
GROUPON, INC.)	
)	
Defendant.)	
)	

**DEFENDANT Groupon, INC.’S NOTICE REGARDING
AUTHENTICITY OBJECTIONS TO TRIAL EXHIBIT LIST OF
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION**

Pursuant to the Court’s June 27, 2018 order granting the June 20, 2018 joint stipulation of the parties (D.I. 323), Defendant Groupon, Inc. (“Groupon”) hereby provides Plaintiff International Business Machines Corporation (“IBM”) with notice of the authenticity objections to exhibits on IBM’s trial exhibit list, which Groupon intends to maintain. Groupon reserves the right to amend, modify, or supplement this notice, consistent with the Court’s orders.

Groupon will maintain authenticity objections to the following documents for the reasons set forth below:

- PX-0578-585, PX-0807-827, PX-0828-872, PX-0891-911: These exhibits include handwritten notes, drafts, printouts, overviews, specifications, and source code that purport to relate to systems related to the patents-in-suit; however, there is no evidence in the record authenticating these exhibits and IBM has not established, and the documents do not show, facts establishing the authenticity of these exhibits, including the

source, date, author or circumstances of their creation.

- PX-0604, PX-0606, PX-0612, PX-0615, PX-0619, PX-0755, PX-0759, PX-1075, PX-1095: These exhibits appear to be webpages and third party documents for which IBM has not established, and the documents do not show, facts establishing the authenticity of these exhibits, including the source or circumstances of their creation or publication.
- PX-0701-074, PX-0706: These exhibits appear to be portions of file histories for the asserted patents; however, they are not certified and therefore IBM has not established the source or authenticity of these documents. The certified file histories are already exhibits on IBM's exhibit list.
- PX-0122, PX-0123: These exhibits purport to be Akamai source code and related documentation; however, there is no evidence in the record authenticating these exhibits and IBM has not established, and the documents do not show, facts establishing the authenticity of these exhibits, including the source, date, author or circumstances of their creation.
- PX-1556-1563: These exhibits purport to be source code file comparisons that were not produced by any party or in response to any subpoena in this action. IBM has not established how these documents were created and by whom and under what circumstances.

//

//

Respectfully submitted,

ASHBY & GEDDES

Of counsel:

J. David Hadden
Saina S. Shamilov
Phillip J. Haack
Sapna Mehta
Jessica Kaempf
Athul Acharya
Jessica Benzler
FENWICK & WEST LLP
Silicon Valley Center
801 California Street
Mountain View, CA 94041
Telephone: 650.988.8500
Facsimile: 650.938.5200

By: /s/ Saina S. Shamilov
Saina S. Shamilov
John G. Day (#2403)
Andrew C. Mayo (#5207)
500 Delaware Avenue, 8th Floor
P.O. Box 1150
Wilmington, DE 19899
(302) 654-1888
jday@ashby-geddes.com
amayo@ashby-geddes.com

Attorneys for Defendant
GROUPON, INC.

Dated: July 3, 2018

CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

I hereby certify that on this 3rd day of July 2018, a true and correct copy of the foregoing document was served on each party through their counsel of record via email.

John M. Desmarais
Karim Oussayef
Robert C. Harrits
Laurie N. Stempler
Jon T. Hohenthaler
DESMARAIS LLP
230 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10169
Tel: (212) 351-3400
IBMGrouponService@desmaraisllp.com
jdesmarais@desmaraisllp.com
koussayef@desmaraisllp.com
rharrits@desmaraisllp.com
lstempler@desmaraisllp.com
jhohenthaler@desmaraislsp.com

Of Counsel for Plaintiff International Business Machines Corporation

David E. Moore (#3983)
Bindu A. Palapura (#5370)
Stephanie E. O'Byrne (#4446)
POTTER ANDERSON & CORROON
LLP
Hercules Plaza, 6th Floor
1313 N. Market Street
Wilmington, DE 19801
Tel: (302) 984-6000
dmoore@potteranderson.com
bpalapura@potteranderson.com
Counsel for Plaintiff International Business Machines Corporation.

/s/ Jessica Benzler

Jessica Benzler
jbenzler@fenwick.com
FENWICK & WEST LLP
Silicon Valley Center
801 California Street
Mountain View, California 94041
Telephone: (650) 988-8500
Facsimile: (650) 938-5200

*Attorneys for Defendant
GROUPON, INC.*

EXHIBIT 2

**IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE**

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES COR-)	
PORATION,)	
)	
Plaintiff,)	
)	
v.)	C.A. No. 1:16-cv-00122-LPS
)	
Groupon, INC.)	
)	
Defendant.)	
)	

**ELECTION OF PRIOR ART FOR INVALIDITY DEFENSES OF
DEFENDANT Groupon, INC.**

Pursuant to the Court's June 15, 2018 order (D.I. 314), the Court's June 18, 2018 order granting the joint stipulation of the parties (D.I. 315), and the parties' June 20, 2018 joint stipulation (D.I. 323), Groupon hereby discloses the prior art per asserted patent that it may contend renders the asserted claims invalid at trial. Nothing herein limits, or intends to limit, the invalidity theories Groupon may advance at trial, evidence upon which Groupon may rely to establish the state of the art of the asserted patents or any authentication or background evidence.

I. U.S. PATENT NO. 5,796,967

	Prior Art	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
1	“Andrew: A Distributed Personal Computing Environment,” James H. Morris	DX-0355
2	Xerox Star	DX-0356, DX-0357
3	HyperCard	DX-0351, DX-0352, DX-0354, DX-0394, DX-0643

4	“Caching Hints in Distributed Systems,” Douglas B. Terry, Journal IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering, Vol. 13 (January 1987)	DX-0358
---	---	---------

II. U.S. PATENT NO. 7,072,849

	Prior Art Reference	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
5	“VIDEOTEX/TELETEXT Principles and Practices,” Antoine F. Alber (1985)	DX-0366
6	U.S. Patent No. 4,575,579 to Simon (Mar. 11, 1986)	DX-0365
7	“Design and Implementation of An Electronic Special Interest Magazine” Gitta B. Salomon (September 1986)	DX-0348
8	IBM’s Trintex System (1987)	DX-0158, DX-0359, DX-0360, DX-0361, DX-0362, DX-0363, DX-0364

III. U.S. PATENT NO. 5,961,601

	Prior Art Reference	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
9	“HTML & CGI UNLEASHED” and accompanying CD including source code, John December	DX-0058, DX-0167, DX-0373
10	“Spinning the Web: a guide to serving information on the World Wide Web,” Yuval Fisher (February 23, 1996)	DX-0374, DX-0442
11	U.S. Patent No. 6,016,484 to Williams (Jan. 18, 2000)	DX-0377
12	Amazon.com system	DX-0202, DX-0375, DX-0376, PX-1544 – PX-1563

IV. U.S. PATENT NO. 7,631,346

	Prior Art Reference	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
13	Liberty Alliance System Specifications	DX-0380, DX-0381, DX-0382, DX-0383, DX-0645, DX-0646, DX-0647
14	Japanese Patent Application Publication No. 2004-302907 to Sunada (Oct. 28, 2004)	DX-0378, DX-0525
15	U.S. Patent No. 7,680,819 to Mellmer (Mar. 16, 2010)	DX-0379
16	U.S. Patent No. 7,137,006 to Grandcolas (Nov. 14, 2006)	DX-0384

Respectfully submitted,

ASHBY & GEDDES

Of counsel:

J. David Hadden
 Saina S. Shamilov
 Phillip J. Haack
 Sapna Mehta
 Jessica Kaempf
 Athul Acharya
 Jessica Benzler
 FENWICK & WEST LLP
 Silicon Valley Center
 801 California Street
 Mountain View, CA 94041
 Telephone: 650.988.8500
 Facsimile: 650.938.5200

By: /s/ Saina S. Shamilov
 Saina S. Shamilov
 John G. Day (#2403)
 Andrew C. Mayo (#5207)
 500 Delaware Avenue, 8th Floor
 P.O. Box 1150
 Wilmington, DE 19899
 (302) 654-1888
jday@ashby-geddes.com
amayo@ashby-geddes.com

Attorneys for Defendant
 Groupon, INC.

Dated: June 26, 2018

CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

I hereby certify that on this 26th day of June 2018, a true and correct copy of the foregoing document was served on each party through their counsel of record via email.

John M. Desmarais
Karim Oussayef
Robert C. Harrits
Laurie N. Stempler
Brian D. Matty
Michael J.X. Matulewicz-Crowley
DESMARAIS LLP
230 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10169
Tel: (212) 351-3400
IBMGroupService@desmaraisllp.com
jdesmarais@desmaraisllp.com
koussayef@desmaraisllp.com
rharrits@desmaraisllp.com
lstempler@desmaraisllp.com
bmatty@desmaraisllp.com
mmatulewicz-crowley@dllp.com

*Of Counsel for Plaintiff International Business
Machines Corporation*

David E. Moore (#3983)
Bindu A. Palapura (#5370)
Stephanie E. O'Byrne (#4446)
POTTER ANDERSON & CORROON
LLP
Hercules Plaza, 6th Floor
1313 N. Market Street
Wilmington, DE 19801
Tel: (302) 984-6000
dmoore@potteranderson.com
bpalapura@potteranderson.com
*Counsel for Plaintiff International Business
Machines Corporation.*

/s/ Jessica Benzler

Jessica Benzler
jbenzler@fenwick.com
FENWICK & WEST LLP
Silicon Valley Center
801 California Street
Mountain View, California 94041
Telephone: (650) 988-8500
Facsimile: (650) 938-5200

*Attorneys for Defendant
GROUPON, INC.*

EXHIBIT 3



Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview

Version: 1.2-errata-v1.0

Editors:

Thomas Wason, IEEE-ISTO

Contributors:

Scott Cantor, Internet2, The Ohio State University

Jeff Hodges, Sun Microsystems, Inc.

John Kemp, IEEE-ISTO

Peter Thompson, IEEE-ISTO

Abstract:

This is a non-normative document describing the basic structure and operation of the Liberty Alliance architecture. Examples are provided to illustrate the operation of systems using the architecture. It is intended that this document provide a general introduction to the Liberty ID-FF architecture.

Filename: draft-liberty-idff-arch-overview-1.2-errata-v1.0.pdf

1

Notice

2 This document has been prepared by Sponsors of the Liberty Alliance. Permission is hereby granted to use the
3 document solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works
4 of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this document for other uses must contact
5 the Liberty Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.

6 Implementation of certain elements of this document may require licenses under third party intellectual property
7 rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The Sponsors of and any other contributors to the Specification are
8 not, and shall not be held responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party
9 intellectual property rights. **This Specification is provided "AS IS", and no participant in the Liberty Alliance**
10 **makes any warranty of any kind, express or implied, including any implied warranties of merchantability,**
11 **non-infringement of third party intellectual property rights, and fitness for a particular purpose.** Implementors
12 of this Specification are advised to review the Liberty Alliance Project's website (<http://www.projectliberty.org/>) for
13 information concerning any Necessary Claims Disclosure Notices that have been received by the Liberty Alliance
14 Management Board.

15 Copyright © 2004-2005 ADAE; Adobe Systems; America Online, Inc.; American Express Company; Avatier
16 Corporation; Axalto; Bank of America Corporation; BIPAC; Computer Associates International, Inc.; DataPower
17 Technology, Inc.; Diversinet Corp.; Enosis Group LLC; Entrust, Inc.; Epok, Inc.; Ericsson; Fidelity Investments;
18 Forum Systems, Inc. ; France Telecom; Gamefederation; Gemplus; General Motors; Giesecke & Devrient GmbH;
19 Hewlett-Packard Company; IBM Corporation; Intel Corporation; Intuit Inc.; Kantega; Kayak Interactive; MasterCard
20 International; Mobile Telephone Networks (Pty) Ltd; NEC Corporation; Netegrity, Inc.; NeuStar, Inc.; Nippon
21 Telegraph and Telephone Corporation; Nokia Corporation; Novell, Inc.; NTT DoCoMo, Inc.; OpenNetwork; Oracle
22 Corporation; Ping Identity Corporation; Royal Mail Group plc; RSA Security Inc.; SAP AG; Senforce; Sharp
23 Laboratories of America; Sigaba; SmartTrust; Sony Corporation; Sun Microsystems, Inc.; Telefonica Moviles, S.A.;
24 Trusted Network Technologies.; Trustgenix; UTI; VeriSign, Inc.; Vodafone Group Plc. All rights reserved.

25 Liberty Alliance Project
26 Licensing Administrator
27 c/o IEEE-ISTO
28 445 Hoes Lane
29 Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331, USA
30 info@projectliberty.org

31 **Contents**

32	1. Introduction	4
33	2. Liberty ID-FF User Experience Examples	7
34	3. Liberty Engineering Requirements Summary	16
35	4. Liberty Architecture	18
36	References	44

37 1. Introduction

38 The Internet is now a prime vehicle for business, community, and personal interactions. The notion of *identity* is
 39 the crucial component of this vehicle. Today, one's identity on the Internet is fragmented across various identity
 40 providers, employers, Internal portals, various communities, and business services. This fragmentation yields isolated,
 41 high-friction, one-to-one customer-to-business relationships and experiences.

42 *Federated network identity* is the key to reducing this friction and realizing new business taxonomies and opportunities,
 43 coupled with new economies of scale. In this new world of federated commerce, a user's online identity, personal
 44 profile, personalized online configurations, buying habits and history, and shopping preferences will be administered
 45 by the user and securely shared with the organizations of the user's choosing. A federated network identity model will
 46 ensure that critical private information is used by appropriate parties.

47 The path to realizing a rich, fertile federated identity infrastructure can be taken in phases. The natural first phase
 48 is the establishment of a standardized, multivendor, Web-based single sign-on with simple federated identities based
 49 on today's commonly deployed technologies. This document presents an overview of the *Liberty Identity Federation*
 50 *Framework (ID-FF)*, which offers a viable approach for implementing such a single sign-on with federated identities.
 51 This overview first summarizes federated network identity, describes two key Liberty ID-FF user experience scenarios,
 52 summarizes the ID-FF engineering requirements and security framework, and then provides a discussion of the Liberty
 53 ID-FF architecture.

54 1.1. About This Document

55 This document is *non-normative*. However, it provides implementers and deployers guidance in the form of policy/security and technical notes. Further details of the Liberty ID-FF architecture are given in several normative
 56 technical documents associated with this overview, specifically [LibertyAuthnContext], [LibertyBindProf], [Liberty-
 57 ImplGuide], and [LibertyProtSchema]. Note: The more global term *Principal* is used for *user* in Liberty's technical
 58 documents. Definitions for Liberty-specific terms can be found in the [LibertyGlossary]. Also, many abbreviations are
 59 used in this document without immediate definition because the authors believe these abbreviations are widely known,
 60 for example, HTTP and SSL. However, the definitions of these abbreviations can also be found in [LibertyGlossary].
 61 Note: Phrases and numbers in brackets [] refer to other documents; details of these references can be found in References
 62 (at the end of this document). As this document is non-normative it does not use terminology "MUST", "MAY",
 63 "SHOULD" in a manner consistent with RFC-2119 (see [RFC2119]).

65 1.2. What is the Liberty Alliance?

66 The Liberty Alliance Project represents a broad spectrum of industries united to drive a new level of trust, commerce,
 67 and communications on the Internet.

68 1.2.1. The Liberty Vision

69 The members of the Liberty Alliance envision a networked world across which individuals and businesses can engage
 70 in virtually any transaction without compromising the privacy and security of vital identity information.

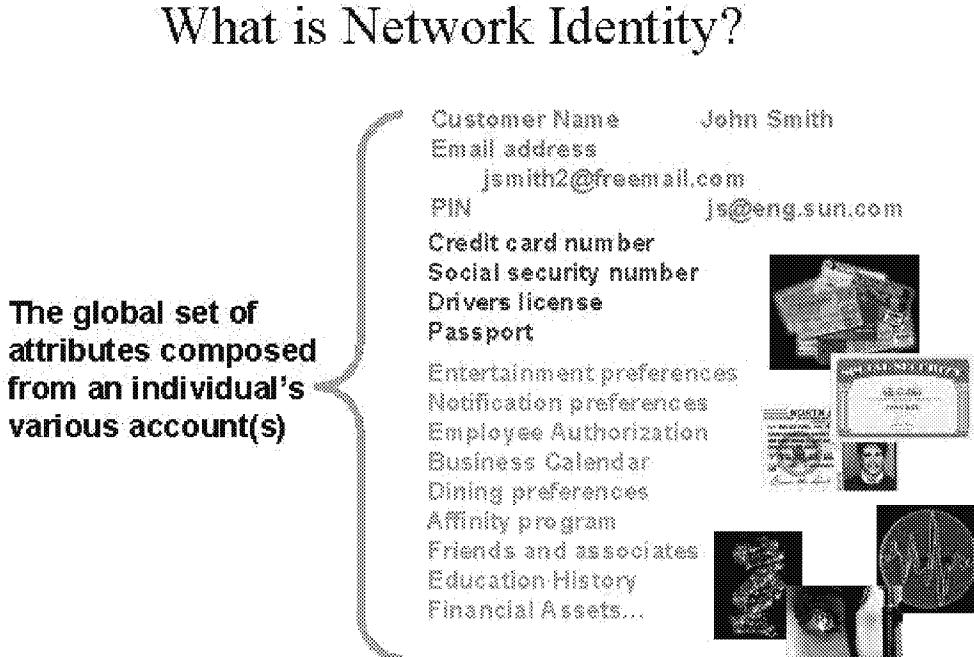
71 1.2.2. The Liberty Mission

72 To accomplish its vision, the Liberty Alliance will establish open technical specifications that support a broad range
 73 of network identity-based interactions and provide businesses with

- 74 • A basis for new revenue opportunities that economically leverage their relationships with consumers and business
 75 partners and
- 76 • A framework within which the businesses can provide consumers with choice, convenience, and control when
 77 using any device connected to the Internet.

78 1.3. What is Network Identity?

79 When users interact with services on the Internet, they often tailor the services in some way for their personal use.
 80 For example, a user may establish an account with a username and password and/or set some preferences for what
 81 information the user wants displayed and how the user wants it displayed. The network identity of each user is the
 82 overall global set of these attributes constituting the various accounts (see Figure 1).



83

84 **Figure 1.** A network identity is the global set of attributes composed from a user's account(s).

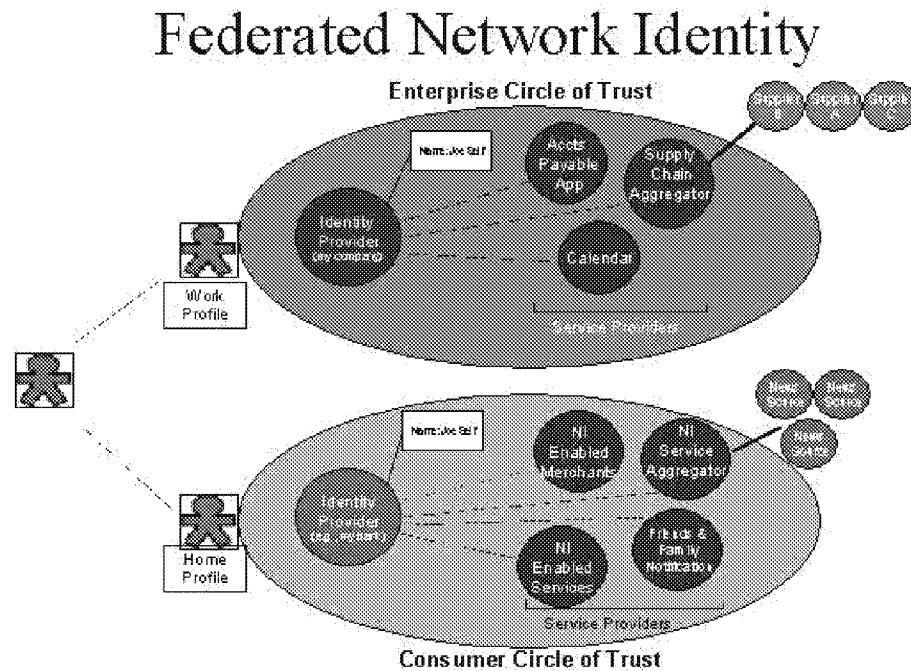
85 Today, users' accounts are scattered across isolated Internet sites. Thus the notion that a user could have a cohesive,
 86 tangible network identity is not realized.

87 1.3.1. The Liberty Objectives

88 The key objectives of the Liberty Alliance are to:

- 89 • Enable consumers to protect the privacy and security of their network identity information
- 90 • Enable businesses to maintain and manage their customer relationships without third-party participation
- 91 • Provide an open single sign-on standard that includes decentralized authentication and authorization from multiple providers
- 93 • Create a network identity infrastructure that supports all current and emerging network access devices

94 These capabilities can be achieved when, first, businesses affiliate together into *circles of trust* based on Liberty-
 95 enabled technology and on operational agreements that define *trust relationships* between the businesses and, second,
 96 users federate the otherwise isolated accounts they have with these businesses (known as their *local identities*). In
 97 other words, a circle of trust is a federation of service providers and identity providers that have business relationships
 98 based on Liberty architecture and operational agreements and with whom users can transact business in a secure and
 99 apparently seamless environment. See Figure 2. Note: Operational agreement definitions are out of the scope of the
 100 Liberty Version 1.2 specifications.



101

102

Figure 2. Federated network identity and circles of trust

103 From a Liberty perspective, the salient actors in Figure 2 are the user, service providers, and identity providers.

104 Service providers are organizations offering Web-based services to users. This broad category includes practically any
 105 organization on the Web today, for example, Internet portals, retailers, transportation providers, financial institutions,
 106 entertainment companies, not-for-profit organizations, governmental agencies, etc.

107 Identity providers are service providers offering business incentives so that other service providers affiliate with them.
 108 Establishing such relationships creates the circles of trust shown in Figure 2. For example, in the enterprise circle
 109 of trust, the identity provider is a company leveraging employee network identities across the enterprise. Another
 110 example is the consumer circle of trust, where the user's bank has established business relationships with various
 111 other service providers allowing the user to wield his/her bank-based network identity with them. Note: A single
 112 organization may be both an identity provider and a service provider, either generally or for a given interaction.

113 These scenarios are enabled by service providers and identity providers deploying Liberty-enabled products in their
 114 infrastructure, but do not require users to use anything other than today's common Web browser.

115 2. Liberty ID-FF User Experience Examples

116 This section provides two simple, plausible examples of the Liberty ID-FF user experience, from the perspective of
117 the user, to set the overall context for delving into technical details of the Liberty architecture in Section 4. As such,
118 actual technical details are hidden or simplified.

119 Note: the user experience examples presented in this section are non-normative and are presented for illustrative
120 purposes only.

121 These user experience examples are based upon the following set of actors:

122 **Joe Self** A user of Web-based online services.

123 **Airline.inc** An airline maintaining an affinity group of partners. Airline.inc is an identity provider.

124 **CarRental.inc** A car rental company that is a member of the airline's affinity group. CarRental.inc is a
125 service provider.

126 The Liberty ID-FF user experience has two main facets:

127 • Identity federation

128 • Single sign-on

129 Identity federation is based upon linking users' otherwise distinct service provider and identity provider accounts.
130 This account linkage, or *identity federation*, in turn underlies and enables the other facets of the Liberty ID-FF user
131 experience.

132 **OVERALL POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

133 Identity federation must be predicated upon prior agreement between the identity and service providers.
 134 It should be additionally predicated upon providing notice to the user, obtaining the user's consent, and
 135 recording both the notice and consent in an auditable fashion. Providing an auditable record of notice
 136 and consent will enable both users and providers to confirm that notice and consent were provided and to
 137 document that the consent is bound to a particular interaction. Such documentation will increase consumer
 138 trust in online services. Implementors and deployers of Liberty-enabled technology should ensure that notice
 139 and user consent are auditably recorded in Liberty-enabled interactions with users, as appropriate.

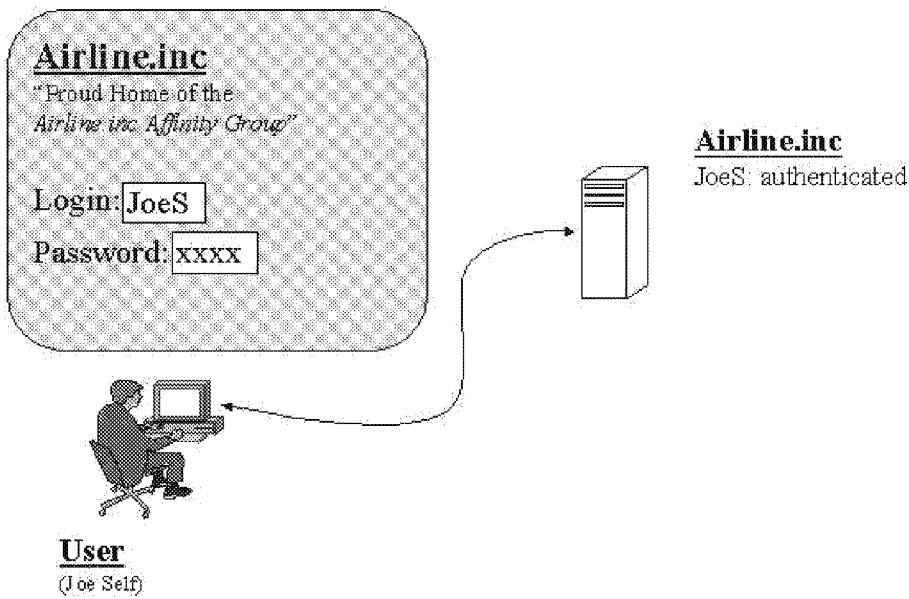
140 Single sign-on enables users to sign on once with a member of a federated group of identity and service providers (or,
 141 from a provider's point of view, with a member of a circle of trust) and subsequently use various Websites among the
 142 group without signing on again.

143 **2.1. Example of Identity Federation User Experience**

144 The identity federation facet of the Liberty ID-FF user experience typically begins when Joe Self logs in to Airline.inc's
 145 Website, a Liberty-enabled identity provider, as illustrated in Figure 3.

146 **Note:**

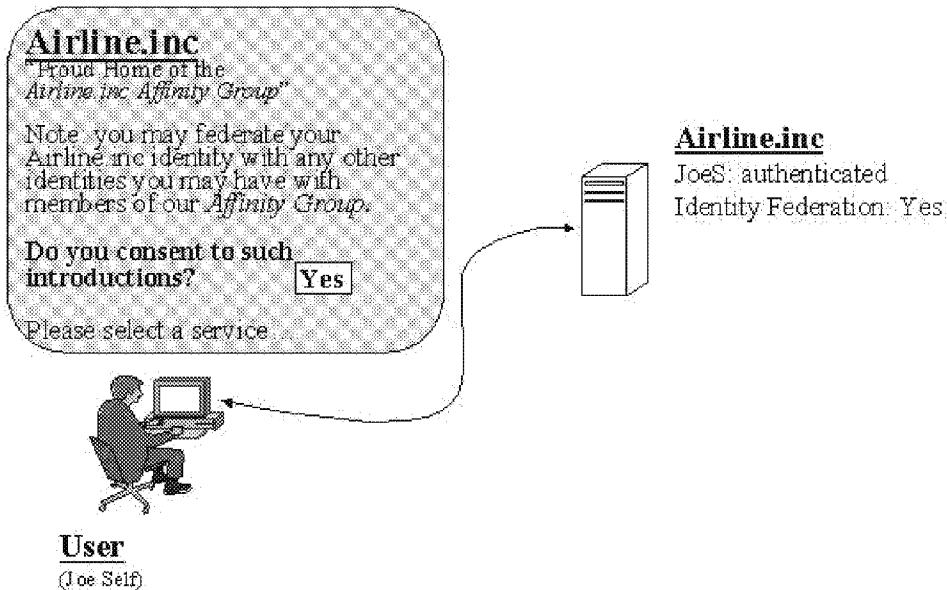
147 Even though Joe Self is unaware of it, behind the scenes the identity provider is using Joe Self's credentials-
 148 his username and password in this case-to authenticate his identity. If successful, Joe Self is considered
 149 *authenticated*.



150

151 **Figure 3. User logs in at a Liberty-enabled Website.**

152 Airline.inc. (as would any other identity provider that has created a circle of trust among its affinity group) will notify
 153 its eligible users of the possibility of federating their local identities among the members of the affinity group and will
 154 solicit permission to facilitate the introduction of the user to the members of the affinity group. See Figure 4.



155

156 **Figure 4.** User is notified of eligibility for identity federation and elects to allow introductions.157 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

158 Figure 4 illustrates the user's consent to being introduced to members of the affinity group. Such an
 159 introduction is the means by which a service provider may discover which identity providers in the circle
 160 of trust have authenticated the user.

161 In Figure 4 the user is not consenting to federating his identity with any service providers. Soliciting consent
 162 to identity federation is a separate step, as illustrated in Figure 5.

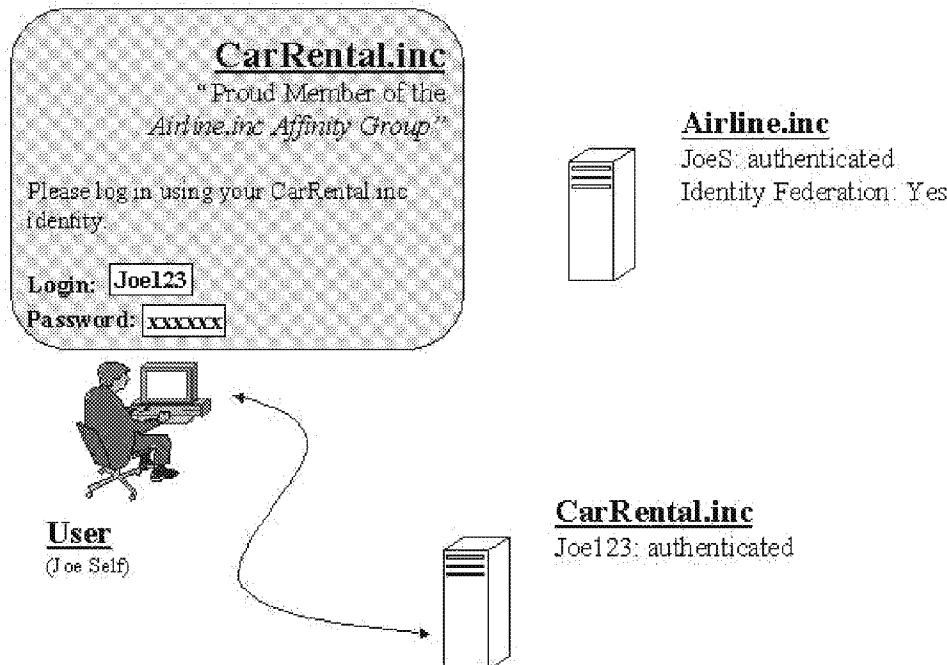
163 Introduction of the user to the affinity group members may be achieved via the Identity Provider Introduction
 164 Profile (as detailed in [LibertyBindProf]), or via other unspecified means, such as when the user agent is a
 165 Liberty-enabled client or proxy (LEC/P).

166 At some later point in time, typically minutes to a few hours, Joe Self may visit the Website of an affinity group
 167 member, for example, CarRental, Inc., whose site is CarRental.inc. Indeed, Joe Self may have followed an explicit
 168 link from the original Airline.inc Website to the CarRental.inc Website. In either case, CarRental.inc (a Liberty-
 169 enabled service provider) is able to discern that Joe Self recently interacted with the Airline.inc Website, because Joe
 170 Self elected to allow introductions.

171 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

172 The actual means used to perform the introduction is an implementation and deployment decision. One
 173 possible means, the Identity Provider Introduction profile, is specified in [LibertyBindProf]. Note that the
 174 user may or may not need to log in in order to facilitate introduction - this depends on the specific introduction
 175 technique used.

176 If the service provider maintains local accounts, as in our example, it will typically, upon Joe Self's arrival, prompt
 177 Joe to log in, which he does using his local CarRental.inc identity. See Figure 5.

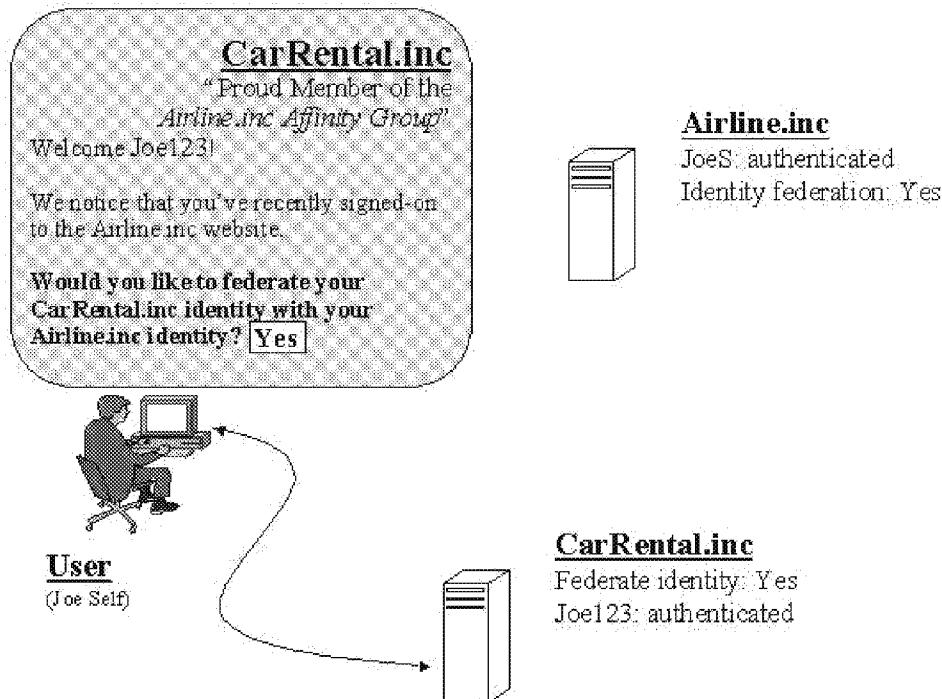


178

179

Figure 5. User signs-on using his local service provider identity.

180 Thereafter, Joe Self is presented with the opportunity to federate his local identities between CarRental.inc and
181 Airline.inc. See Figure 6.



182

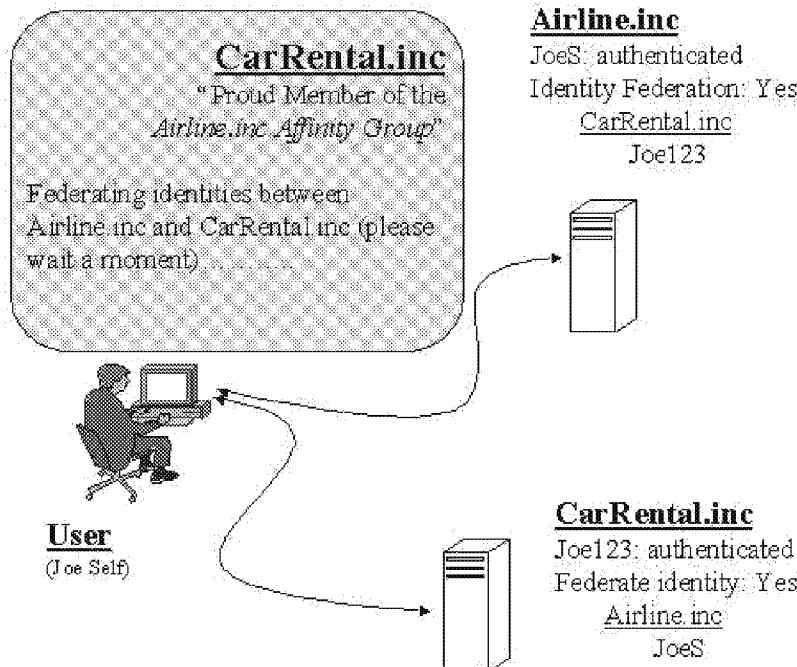
183

Figure 6. User is prompted to federate his local identities and selects "yes."

184 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

185 Whether the service provider asks for consent to federate the user's local identity before or after locally
186 authenticating the user is a matter of local deployment policy.

187 As a part of logging in to the CarRental.inc Website, Joe Self's local CarRental.inc identity is federated with his local
188 Airline.inc identity. See Figure 7.



189

190

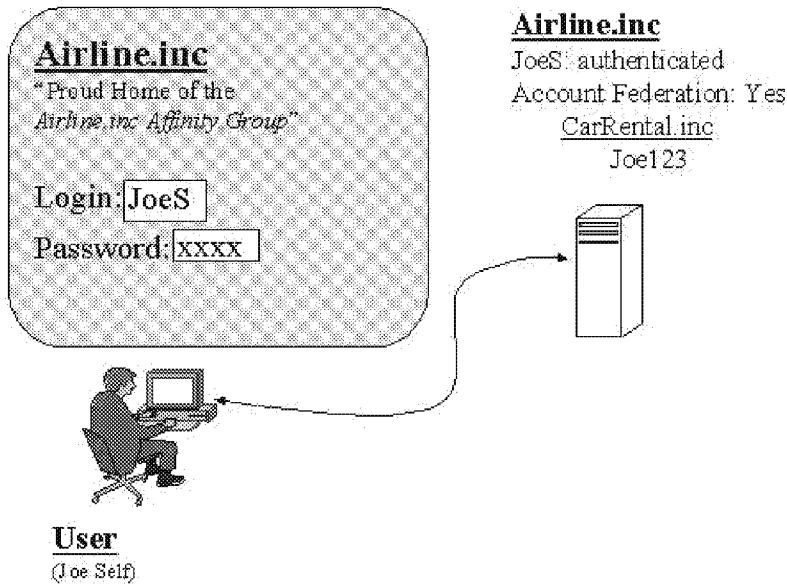
Figure 7. The Websites federate the user's local identities.

191 Upon completion of the login and identity federation activity, Joe User is logged in to the CarRental.inc Website, and
 192 CarRental.inc delivers services to him as usual. In addition, the Website may now offer new selections because Joe
 193 Self's local service provider (CarRental.inc) identity has been federated with his local identity provider (Airline.inc)
 194 identity. See Figure 8.

195 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

196 Some figures illustrating the user experience, for example, Figure 7, show simplified, user-perspective notions
 197 of how identity federation is effected. In actuality, cleartext identifiers, for example, "JoeS" and "Joe123"
 198 WILL NOT be exchanged between the identity provider and service provider. Rather, opaque user handles
 199 will be exchanged. See Section 4.4.1 for details.

200 Additionally, if errors are encountered in the process of authenticating and/or federating, the service provider
 201 will need to present appropriate indications to the user.



202

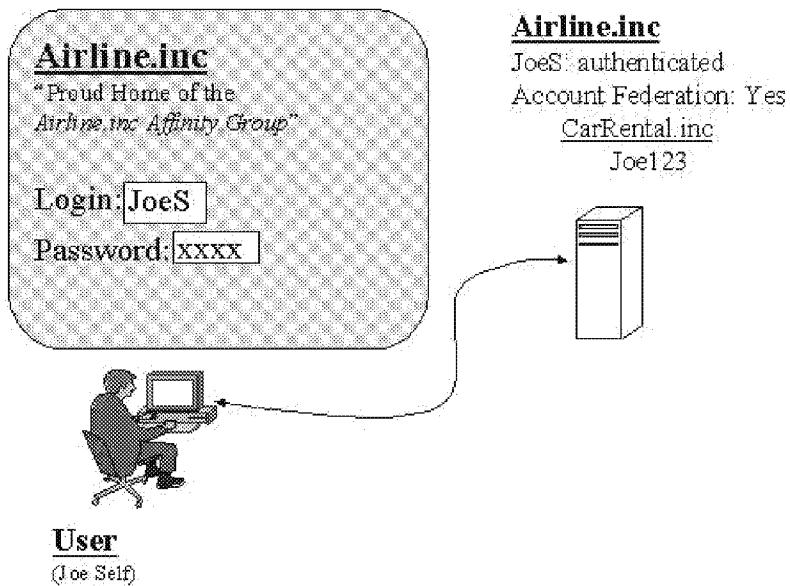
203

Figure 8. The service provider delivers services to user as usual.204 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

205 Business prerequisites must be met to offer identity federation. Two prerequisites are notifying the user of
 206 the capability to federate and soliciting consent to facilitate introductions. Another is creating agreements
 207 between the affinity group members to establish their policies for recognizing identities and honoring
 208 reciprocal authentication.

209 **2.2. Example of Single Sign-on User Experience**

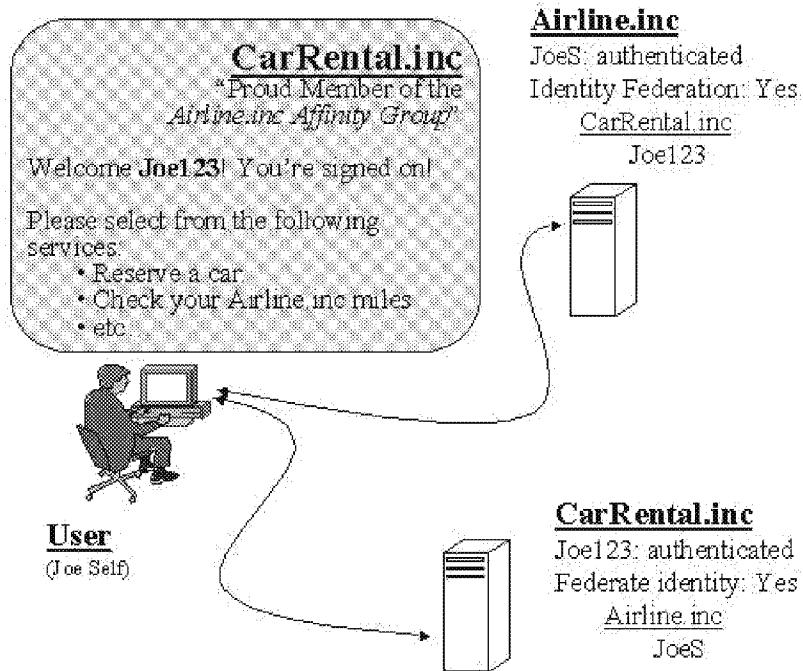
210 Single sign-on builds upon identity federation and has a simple user experience. Joe Self logs in to the Airline.inc
 211 Website and later visits the CarRental.inc Website with which he has established identity federation. Joe Self's
 212 authentication state with the Airline.inc Website is reciprocally honored by the CarRental.inc Website, and Joe Self is
 213 transparently logged in to the latter site. See Figure 9 and Figure 10.



214

215

Figure 9. User logs in to identity provider's Website using local identity.



216

217 Figure 10. User proceeds to service provider's Website, and his authentication state is reciprocally honored by the service
218 provider's Website.219 A perceptive Joe Self will notice that his name in the CarRental.inc session is based upon his local CarRental.inc
220 identity, rather than the local Airline.inc identity with which it has been federated.

221 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

222 Because users' actual account identifiers are not exchanged during federation, a service provider will not be
223 able to display a user's identity provider identifier.

224 Also, many types of service provider Websites may not use a personally identifiable identifier in response to
225 the user. For example, advertising-driven sites where users may specify display preferences, for example, a
226 sporting events schedule site. The site may simply transparently refer to the user as "you," for example, "Set
227 your display preferences here...," "Here is the list of upcoming events you're interested in...," etc.

228 **SECURITY/POLICY NOTE:**

229 Even though the user may be validly authenticated via the single sign-on mechanism, the user's use of the
230 service provider's Website is still subject to local policy. For example, the site may have time-of-day usage
231 restrictions, the site may be undergoing maintenance, the user's relationship with the service provider may
232 be in a particular state (for example, highly valued customer - show the user the bonus pages; troublesome
233 customer - remind the user of unpaid bills and restrict some access).

234 **3. Liberty Engineering Requirements Summary**

235 This section summarizes the Liberty general and functional engineering requirements.

236 **3.1. General Requirements**

237 The Liberty-enabled systems should follow the set of general principals outlined in Section 3.1.1 and Section 3.1.2.
238 These principles cut across categories of functionality.

239 **3.1.1. Client Device/User Agent Interoperability**

240 Liberty Version 1.2 clients encompass a broad range of presently deployed Web browsers, other presently deployed
241 Web-enabled client access devices, and newly designed Web-enabled browsers or clients with specific Liberty-enabled
242 features.

243 The Liberty Version 1.2 architecture and protocol specifications must support a basic level of functionality across the
244 range of Liberty Version 1.2 clients.

245 **3.1.2. Openness Requirements**

246 The Liberty architecture and protocol specifications must provide the widest possible support for:

247 • Operating systems

248 • Programming languages

249 • Network infrastructures

250 and must not impede multivendor interoperability between Liberty clients and services, including interoperability
251 across circle of trust boundaries.

252 **3.2. Functional Requirements**

253 The Liberty architecture and protocols must be specified so that Liberty-enabled implementations are capable of
254 performing the following activities:

255 • Identity federation

256 • Authentication

257 • Use of pseudonyms

258 • Support for Anonymity

259 • Global logout

260 **3.2.1. Identity Federation**

261 Requirements of identity federation stipulate that:

262 • Providers give the user notice upon identity federation and defederation.

263 • Service providers and identity providers notify each other about identity defederation.

264 • Each identity provider notifies appropriate service providers of user account terminations at the identity provider.

265 • Each service provider and/or identity provider gives each of its users a list of the user's federated identities at the
266 identity provider or service provider.

267 • A service provider may also request an anonymous, temporary identity for a Principal.

268 **3.2.2. Authentication**

269 Authentication requirements include:

270 • Supporting any method of navigation between identity providers and service providers on the part of the user, that
271 is, how the user navigates from A to B (including click-through, favorites or bookmarks, URL address bar, etc.)
272 must be supported.

273 • Giving the identity provider's authenticated identity to the user before the user gives credentials or any other
274 personally identifiable information to the identity provider.

275 • Providing for the confidentiality, integrity, and authenticity of information exchanged between identity providers,
276 service providers, and user agents, as well as mutually authenticating the identities of the identity providers and
277 service providers, during the authentication and single sign-on processes.

278 • Supporting a range of authentication methods, extensibly identifying authentication methods, providing for
279 coalescing authentication methods into authentication classes, and citing and exchanging authentication classes.
280 Protocols for exchanging this information are out of the scope of the Liberty Version 1.2 specifications, however.

281 • Exchanging the following minimum set of authentication information with regard to a user: authentication status,
282 instant, method, and pseudonym (which may be temporary or persistent).

283 • Giving service providers the capability of causing the identity provider to reauthenticate the user using the same
284 or a different authentication class. Programmatic exchange of the set of authentication classes for which a user is
285 registered at an identity provider is out of the scope of the Liberty Version 1.2 specifications, however.

286 • Allowing an identity provider, at the discretion of the service provider, to authenticate the user via an identity
287 provider other than itself and relay this information to a service provider.

288 **3.2.3. Pseudonyms**

289 Liberty-enabled implementations must be able to support the use of pseudonyms that are unique on a per-identity-
290 federation basis across all identity providers and service providers.

291 **3.2.4. Anonymity**

292 A service provider may request that an identity provider supply a temporary pseudonym that will preserve the
293 anonymity of a Principal. This identifier may be used to obtain information for or about the Principal (with his or
294 her permission) via mechanisms that are outside the scope of the ID-FF, without requiring the user to consent to a long
295 term relationship with the service provider.

296 **3.2.5. Global Logout**

297 Liberty-enabled implementations must be able to support the notification of service providers when a user logs out at
298 identity provider.

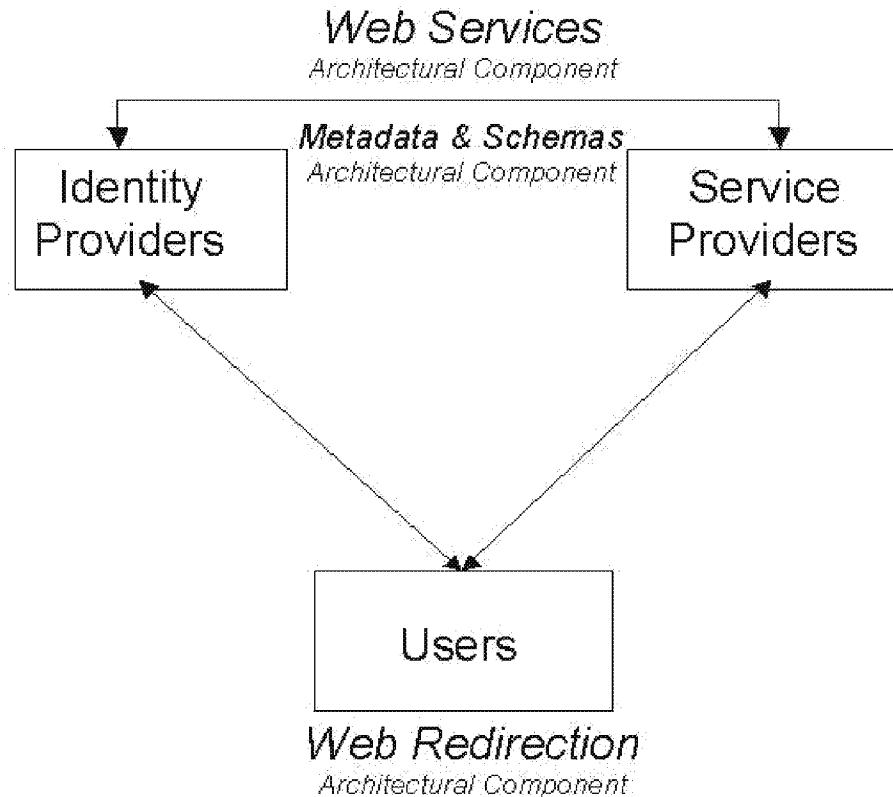
299 4. Liberty Architecture

300 The overall Liberty architecture is composed of three orthogonal architectural components (see Figure 11):

301 • Web redirection

302 • Web services

303 • Metadata and schemas



304

305 **Figure 11. Overall Liberty architecture**

306 The role of each architectural component is summarized in Table 2:

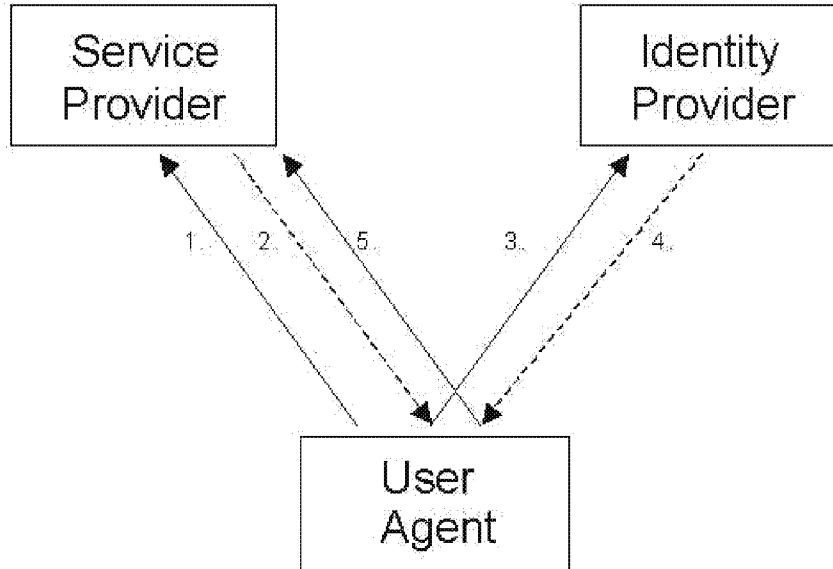
307 **Table 2. Components of Liberty architecture**

Web redirection	Action that enables Liberty-enabled entities to provide services via today's user-agent-installed base.
Web services	Protocol profiles that enable Liberty-enabled entities to directly communicate.
Metadata and schemas	A common set of metadata and formats used by Liberty-enabled sites to communicate various provider-specific and other information.

308 Section 4.1 through Section 4.3 describe each architectural component. Section 4.4 through Section 4.6 then
309 relate the architectural components to the concrete protocols and profiles detailed in [LibertyProtSchema] and
310 [LibertyBindProf], and Section 4.7 provides illustrations of user experience.

311 **4.1. Web Redirection Architectural Component**

312 The Web redirection architectural component is composed of two generic variants: HTTP-redirect-based redirection
 313 and form-POST-based redirection. Both variants create a communication channel between identity providers and
 314 service providers that is rooted in the user agent. See Figure 12.



315

316 **Figure 12. Web redirection between a service provider and an identity provider via the user agent**

317 **4.1.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Redirection**

318 HTTP-redirect-based redirection uses the HTTP redirection class of response (that is, *redirects*) of the HTTP protocol
 319 (see [RFC2616]) and the syntax of URIs (see [RFC1738] and [RFC2396]) to provide a communication channel
 320 between identity providers and service providers. Thus the steps shown in Figure 12 create a communication channel
 321 between the service provider and identity provider as follows:

- 322 1. The user agent sends an HTTP request to the service provider (typically a GET). In this step the user has typically
 323 clicked on a link in the Webpage presently displayed in the user agent.
- 324 2. The service provider responds with an HTTP response with a status code of 302 (that is, a redirect) and an
 325 alternate URI in the Location header field. In this example, the Location URI will point to the identity provider
 326 and will also contain a second, embedded URI pointing back to the service provider.
- 327 3. The user agent sends an HTTP request to the identity provider (typically a GET), specifying the complete URI
 328 taken from the Location field of the response returned in Step 2 as the argument of the GET. Note: This URI
 329 contains the second, embedded URI pointing back to the service provider.
- 330 4. The identity provider can then respond in kind with a redirect whose Location header field contains the URI
 331 pointing to the service provider (extracted from the GET argument URI supplied in Step 3) and optionally contains
 332 an embedded, second URI pointing back to itself.
- 333 5. The user agent sends an HTTP request to the service provider (typically a GET), specifying the complete URI
 334 taken from the Location field of the response returned in Step 4 as the argument of the GET. Note: This URI
 335 might contain any second, embedded URI pointing back to the identity provider.

336 **Note:**

337 Both URIs are passed as arguments of HTTP GET requests, and the Location response-header field of redirect
 338 responses can contain either or both embedded URIs and other arbitrary data. Thus the identity provider and
 339 service provider can relatively freely exchange arbitrary information between themselves across this channel.
 340 See Table 3.

341 **Table 3. Embedding a parameter within an HTTP redirect**

Location: http://www.foobar.com/auth	Redirects to foobar.com
Location: http://www.foobar.com/auth?XYZ=1234	Redirects to foobar.com and also passes a parameter "XYZ" with the value "1234"

342 **4.1.2. Form-POST-Based Redirection**

343 In form-POST-based redirection, the following steps in Figure 12 are modified as follows:

344 2. The service provider responds by returning an HTML form to the user agent containing an action parameter
 345 pointing to the identity provider and a method parameter with the value of POST. Arbitrary data may be included
 346 in other form fields. The form may also include a JavaScript or ECMAScript fragment that causes the next step
 347 to be performed without user interaction.

348 3. Either the user clicks on the Submit button, or the JavaScript or ECMAScript executes. In either case, the form
 349 and its arbitrary data contents are sent to the identity provider via the HTTP POST method.

350 The above process can be reversed in Steps 4 and 5 to effect form-POST-based communication in the opposite
 351 direction.

352 **4.1.3. Cookies**353 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

354 Use of cookies by implementors and deployers should be carefully considered, especially if a cookie contains
 355 either or both personally identifying information and authentication information. Cookies can be either
 356 ephemeral (that is, this session only) or persistent. Persistent cookies are of special concern because they
 357 are typically written to disk and persist across user agent invocations. Thus if a session authentication token
 358 is cached in a persistent cookie, the user exits the browser, and another person uses the system and relaunches
 359 the browser, then the second person could impersonate the user (unless any authentication time limits imposed
 360 by the authentication mechanism have expired).

361 Additionally, persistent cookies should be used *only* with the consent of the user. This consent step allows,
 362 for example, a user at a public machine to prohibit a persistent cookie that would otherwise remain in the user
 363 agent's cookie cache after the user is finished.

364 **4.1.3.1. Why Not Use Cookies in General?**

365 Cookies are the HTTP state management mechanism specified in [RFC2965] and are a means for Web servers to store
 366 information, that is, maintain state, in the user agent. However, the default security setting in the predominant user
 367 agents allow cookies to be read only by the Website that wrote them. This discrimination is based on the DNS domains
 368 of the reading and writing sites.

369 To permit multiple identity providers and service providers in different DNS domains to communicate using cookies,
 370 users must lower the default security settings of their user agents. This option is often an unacceptable requirement.

371 Additionally, it is not uncommon for users and/or their organizations to operate their user agents with cookies turned
372 off.

373 **4.1.3.2. Where Cookies are Used**

374 In the Liberty context, cookies might be used for maintaining local session state, and cookies are used in addressing
375 the introduction problem (see Section 4.5).

376 The fact that identity providers cannot arbitrarily send data to service providers via cookies does not preclude
377 identity providers and service providers from writing cookies to store local session state and other, perhaps persistent,
378 information.

379 **4.1.4. Web Redirection Summary**

380 Web redirection is not an ideal distributed systems architecture.

381 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

382 Communications across Web redirection channels as described in Section 4.1.1 through Section 4.1.3 have
383 many well-documented security vulnerabilities, which should be given careful consideration when designing
384 protocols utilizing Web redirection. Such consideration was incorporated into the design of the profiles
385 specified in [LibertyBindProf], and specific considerations are called out as appropriate in that document (for
386 example, regarding cleartext transmissions and caching vulnerabilities). Examples of security vulnerabilities
387 include:

388 • **Interception:** Such communications go across the wire in cleartext unless all the steps in Section 4.1.1
389 through Section 4.1.3 are carried out over an SSL or TLS session or across another secured communication
390 transport, for example, an IPsec-based VPN.

391 • **User agent leakage:** Because the channel is redirected through the user agent, many opportunities arise
392 for the information to be cached in the user agent and revealed later. This caching is possible even if a secure
393 transport is used because the conveyed information is kept in the clear in the browser. Thus any sensitive
394 information conveyed in this fashion needs to be encrypted on its own before being sent across the channel.

395 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

396 A key limitation of Web redirection is the overall size of URIs passed as arguments of GET requests and
 397 as values of the Location field in redirects. These elements have size limitations that vary from browser to
 398 browser and are particularly small in some mobile handsets. These limitations were incorporated into the
 399 design of the protocols specified in [LibertyProtSchema] and [LibertyBindProf].

400 In spite of the vulnerabilities and limitations of Web redirection, use of this mechanism enables distributed, cross-
 401 domain interactions, such as single sign-on, with today's deployed HTTP infrastructure on the Internet.

402 Both generic variants of Web redirection underlie several of the profiles specified in [LibertyBindProf]: Single Sign-On
 403 and Federation, Identity Federation Termination Notification, Name Identifier Registration, and Single Logout.

404 **4.2. Web Services Architectural Component**

405 Various Liberty protocol interaction steps are profiled to occur directly between system entities in addition to
 406 other steps occurring via Web redirection and are based on RPC-like protocol messages conveyed via SOAP (see
 407 [SOAPv1.1]). SOAP is a widely implemented specification for RPC-like interactions and message communications
 408 using XML and HTTP and hence is a natural fit for this architectural component.

409 **4.3. Metadata and Schemas Architectural Component**

410 *Metadata and schemas* is an umbrella term generically referring to various subclasses of information and their formats
 411 exchanged between service providers and identity providers, whether via protocol or out of band. The subclasses of
 412 exchanged information are

413 • **Account/Identity:** In Liberty Version 1.2, account/identity is simply the opaque user handle that serves as the
 414 name that the service provider and the identity provider use in referring to the user when communicating. In other
 415 Liberty phases, it encompasses various attributes.

416 • **Authentication Context:** Liberty explicitly accommodates identity provider use of arbitrary authentication
 417 mechanisms and technologies. Different identity providers will choose different technologies, follow different
 418 processes, and be bound by different legal obligations with respect to how they authenticate users. The choices
 419 that an identity provider makes here will be driven in large part by the requirements of the service providers with
 420 which the identity provider has federated. Those requirements, in turn, will be determined by the nature of the
 421 service (that is, the sensitivity of any information exchanged, the associated financial value, the service providers
 422 risk tolerance, etc) that the service provider will be providing to the user. Consequently, for anything other than
 423 trivial services, if the service provider is to place sufficient confidence in the authentication assertions it receives
 424 from an identity provider, the service provider must know which technologies, protocols, and processes were
 425 used or followed for the original authentication mechanism on which the authentication assertion is based. The
 426 authentication context schema provides a means for service providers and identity providers to communicate such
 427 information (see [LibertyAuthnContext]).

428 • **Provider Metadata:** For identity providers and service providers to communicate with each other, they must
 429 a priori have obtained metadata regarding each other. These provider metadata include items such as X.509
 430 certificates and service endpoints. [LibertyMetadata] defines metadata schemas for identity providers and service
 431 providers that may be used for provider metadata exchange.

432 4.4. Single Sign-On and Identity Federation

433 The single sign-on and identity federation aspects of Liberty are facilitated by the Single Sign-On and Federation
 434 Protocol, which is specified in [LibertyProtSchema]. It facilitates both identity federation (see Section 4.4.1) and
 435 single sign-on (see Section 4.4.2) in a single overall protocol flow. The various profiles of the overall protocol flow
 436 that are defined in [LibertyBindProf] are discussed in Section 4.4.3.

437 4.4.1. Single Sign-On and Identity Federation

438 The first time that users use an identity provider to log in to a service provider they must be given the option of
 439 federating an existing local identity on the service provider with the identity provider login to preserve existing
 440 information under the single sign-on. See Figure 13. It is critical that, in a system with multiple identity providers
 441 and service providers, a mechanism exists by which users can be (at their discretion) uniquely identified across the
 442 providers. However, it is technically challenging to create a globally unique ID that is not tied to a particular identity
 443 provider and a business challenge to ensure the portability of globally unique IDs.



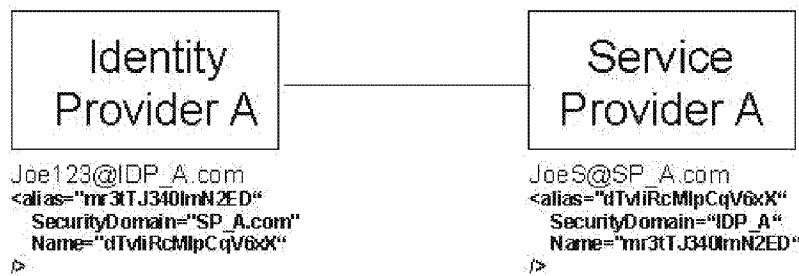
444

445 Figure 13. User initiates federation of two identities

446 An explicit trust relationship, or chain, is created with the opt-in identity federation that occurs the first time a user logs
 447 in to a service provider using an identity provider. While multiple identities can be federated to each other, an explicit
 448 link exists between each identity. Providers cannot skip over each other in the trust chain to request information on or
 449 services for a user because user identity information must be checked at each step. Therefore, the only requirement is
 450 that, when two elements of a trust chain communicate, they can differentiate users.

451 Members of the circle of trust are not required to provide the actual account identifier for a user and can instead
 452 provide a handle for a particular user. Members can also choose to create multiple handles for a particular user.
 453 However, identity providers must create a single handle for each service provider that has multiple Websites so that
 454 the handle can be resolved across the Websites.

455 Because both the identity provider and service provider in such a federation need to remember the other's handle for
 456 the user, they create entries in their user directories for each other and note each other's handle for the user. See
 457 Figure 14 and Figure 15.



458

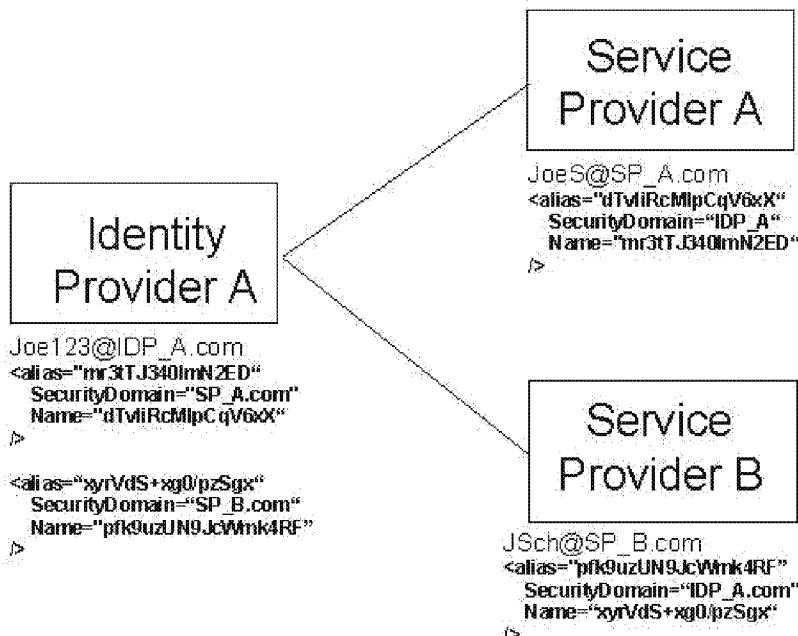
459 Figure 14. User directories of the identity provider and service provider upon identity federation

460 TECHNICAL NOTE:

461 Figure 14, along with the three following figures, illustrate bilateral identity federation; this is where both
 462 the service provider and identity provider exchange handles for the user. However, bilateral handle exchange

463 is an *optional* feature of the Liberty Single Sign-On and Federation protocol. In some scenarios, only the
 464 identity provider's handle will be conveyed to the service provider(s). This will typically be the case where
 465 the service provider doesn't otherwise maintain its own user repository.

466 The lines connecting the identity and service providers in the aforementioned figures signify federation
 467 relationships rather than communication exchanges.



468

469 Figure 15. User directories of the identity provider and multiple service providers upon identity federation.

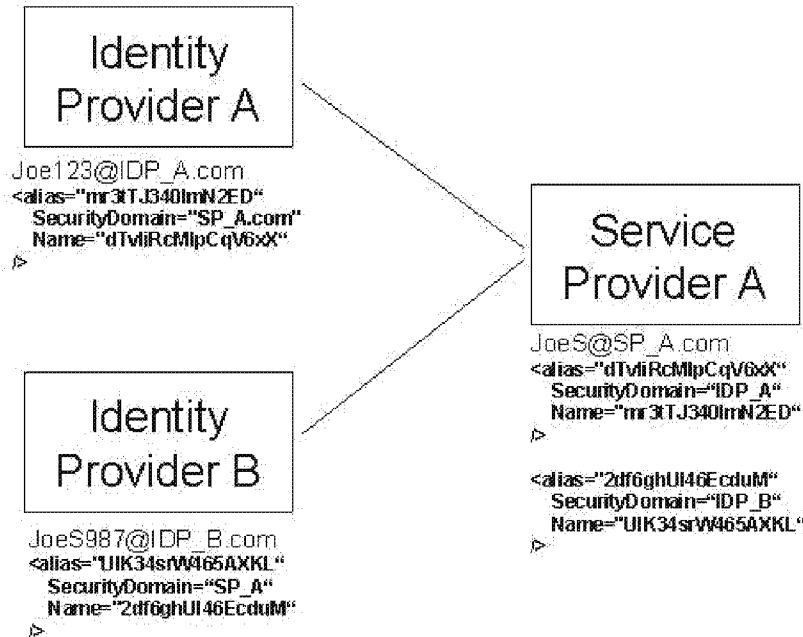
470 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

471 1. Observe in Figure 15 that SP_A and SP_B cannot communicate directly about Joe Self. They can
 472 only communicate with the identity provider individually. This feature is desirable from policy and security
 473 perspectives. If Joe Self wishes the service providers to be able to exchange information about him, then he
 474 must explicitly federate the two service provider identities, effectively opting in.

475 Another aspect of this feature is that if the user's local identity is compromised on, for example, SP_A, the
 476 local identities at IDP_A or SP_B are not necessarily also compromised.

477 2. Properties of the user handles, for example, mr3tJ340ImN2ED, (also known as *name identifiers*) need
 478 to be carefully considered. It may not be enough for them to be opaque. Considerations of the construction
 479 of name identifiers are discussed in [LibertyProtSchema]. Additionally, user handles should be refreshed
 480 periodically. Service providers may refresh the user handles they optionally supply to identity providers via
 481 the register name identifier profile defined in [LibertyBindProf]. Identity providers may also use the same
 482 profile to optionally refresh the user handles they supply to service providers.

483 While it is obvious that a user can sign in at multiple service providers with an identity provider, a user can also link
 484 multiple identity providers to a particular service provider. See Figure 16. This ability proves useful when a user
 485 switches from a work computer to a home computer or from a computer to a mobile device, each of which may be
 486 associated with a different identity provider and circle of trust.



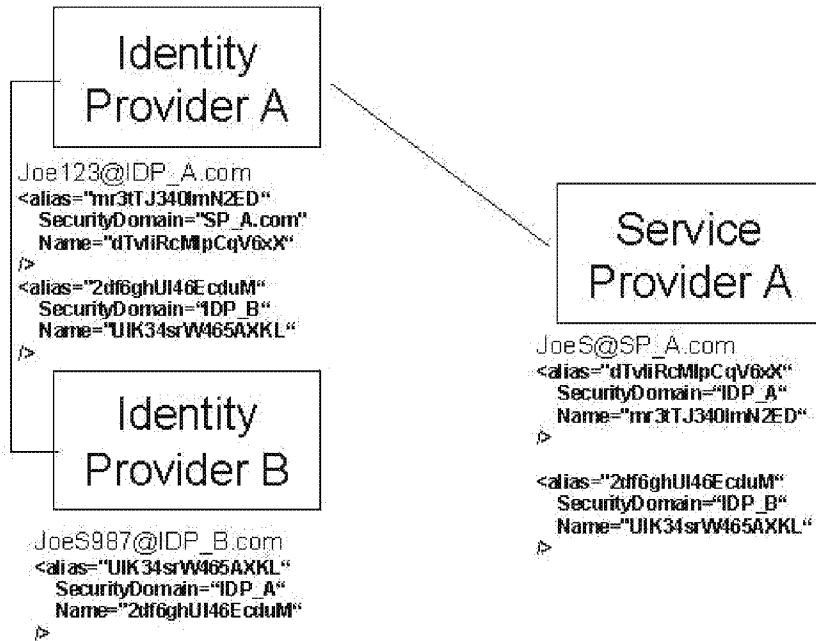
487

488 **Figure 16. A user with two identity providers federated to a service provider**

489 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

490 Subtle considerations arise here in terms of how easy it is for a user to switch between identities and how
 491 this capability is materialized. IDP_A may belong to the same circles of trust as more than one of the user's
 492 devices. Therefore, certain questions arise, for example, How do users know to which (or both) identity
 493 provider they are presently logged in? Features satisfying such questions are a way for identity providers and
 494 circles of trust to differentiate themselves.

495 While federating two identity providers to a service provider, as illustrated in Figure 16, enables the user to log
 496 in to the service provider using either identity provider, the user must remember to federate new service providers
 497 to both identity providers, which can be a cumbersome process. An alternative is for the user to federate identity
 498 providers together and set policies enabling identity providers to access each other's information. See Figure 17 and
 499 the following POLICY/SECURITY NOTE. The user can then use a preferred identity provider to log in to service
 500 providers, but always has the choice of adding additional identity providers to a service provider.



501

502

Figure 17. A user with two identity providers federated

503 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

504 In Figure 17, Identity Provider A is acting as both a service provider and an identity provider.

505 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

506 • The semantics of such a federated relationship (Figure 17) between identity providers are not dictated
 507 by the underlying Liberty protocols, nor are they precluded. These semantics need to be addressed by the
 508 agreements between the identity providers and supported by the capabilities of the deployed Liberty-enabled
 509 implementations.

510 • Additionally, how trust relationships between identity providers are established, and how those relation-
 511 ships are represented to service providers, are unspecified. Identity providers enabling relationships such as
 512 that illustrated in Figure 17 must mutually define governing policies and means of representing such trust
 513 relationships to relying service providers (for example Service Provider A in Figure 17).

514 • Circle of trust agreements should address how federation failures are materialized to users.

515 • Appropriate portions of the assertions passed between the identity provider and the service provider to
 516 effect federation should be logged.

517 • By creating many local identities with many service providers and/or identity providers and then
 518 federating them, users possess many sets of local credentials that may be used as a basis to authenticate
 519 with many service providers via single sign-on. This situation constitutes a risk. For example, every identity
 520 provider that possesses reusable user credentials, for example, a username and password, can impersonate the
 521 user at every service provider federated with that account.

522 In the normal course of events, some local credentials may go unused for periods of time because the user is
 523 making use of the local account via single sign-on from another identity provider. Thus a means of controlling
 524 the growth of a user's set of local credentials might be to offer the user the option of invalidating local
 525 credentials at identity federation time and also perhaps after a certain number of times of visiting the Website
 526 without using them.

527 **4.4.1.1. No Need for Global Account/Identity Namespace**

528 Given the above architecture where users opt to federate identities at different identity providers and service providers,
 529 a global namespace across all of the players should not be needed. Circle of trust members can communicate with each
 530 other, about or on a user's behalf, only when a user has created a specific federation between the local identities and
 531 has set policies for that federation. Although long chains of identity providers and service providers can be created,
 532 the user's identity is federated in each link in the chain and, therefore, a globally unique ID need not exist for that user
 533 across all of the elements of the chain. See Figure 17.

534 **4.4.1.2. Single Sign-On with Anonymity**

535 In some scenarios, a user may not need to establish a long term relationship or identifier with a service in order to
 536 use that service, or gain the benefits of single sign-on across services using the same identity provider. Typically, the
 537 short-term identifier that is given to a service can be leveraged at the time of sign-on to obtain other information or
 538 provide services to the user through the use of additional protocols that are outside the scope of Liberty ID-FF.

539 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

540 When such an identifier is requested, it must be generated for a single use, and given only to a single service
 541 provider, rather than shared or reused. Other information shared about the user through other means should
 542 be at the user's discretion.

543 **4.4.1.3. Federation Management: Defederation**

544 Users will have the ability to terminate federations, or defederate identities. [LibertyProtSchema] and [LibertyBind-
 545 Prof] specify a Federation Termination Notification Protocol and related profiles. Using this protocol, a service
 546 provider may initiate defederation with an identity provider or vice versa. The nominal user experience is for the
 547 user to select a Defederate link on a service provider's or identity provider's Webpage. This link initiates defederation
 548 with respect to some other, specific, identity provider or service provider.

549 When defederation is initiated at an identity provider, the identity provider is stating to the service provider that it
 550 will no longer provide user identity information to the service provider and that the identity provider will no longer
 551 respond to any requests by the service provider on behalf of the user.

552 When defederation is initiated at a service provider, the service provider is stating to the identity provider that the user
 553 has requested that the identity provider no longer provide the user identity information to the service provider and that
 554 service provider will no longer ask the identity provider to do anything on the behalf of the user.

555 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

556 Regarding defederation, several issues must be considered:

557 • The user should be authenticated by the provider at which identity defederation is being initiated.

558 • Providers should ask the user for confirmation before performing defederation and appropriately log the
 559 event and appropriate portions of the user's authentication information.

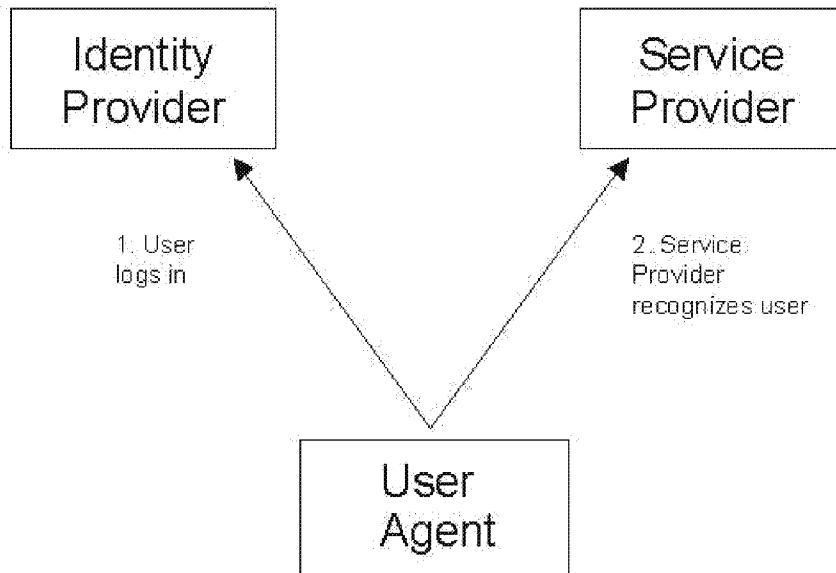
560 • It is recommended that the service provider, after initiating or receiving a federation termination notification
 561 for a Principal, check whether that Principal is presently logged in to the service provider on the basis of
 562 an assertion from the identity provider with which the federation termination notification was exchanged. If
 563 so, then the local session information that was based on the identity provider's assertion should be invalidated.
 564 If the service provider has local session state information for the Principal that is not based on assertions made
 565 by the identity provider with which the federation termination notification was exchanged, then the service
 566 provider may continue to maintain that information.

567 • If the Principal subsequently initiates a single sign-on session with the same identity provider, the service
 568 provider will need to request federation as well as authentication from the identity provider.

569 • Other means of federation termination are possible, such as federation expiration and termination of
 570 business agreements between service providers and identity providers.

571 4.4.2. Single Sign-on

572 Single sign-on is enabled once a user's identity provider and service provider identities are federated. From a user's
 573 perspective, single sign-on is realized when the user logs in to an identity provider and uses multiple affiliated service
 574 providers without having to sign on again (see Figure 18). This convenience is accomplished by having federated
 575 the user's local identities between the applicable identity providers and the service providers. The basic user single
 576 sign-on experience is illustrated in Section 4.4.1.



577

578 **Figure 18. User logs in at identity provider and is recognized by service provider**

579 [LibertyBindProf] specifies single sign-on by profiling both the "Browser/Artifact Profile" and the "Browser/Post
 580 Profile" of SAML (see [SAMLBind]).

581 **Note:**

582 POLICY/SECURITY NOTE: Regarding authentication, single sign-on, credentials, etc., several issues must
 583 be considered:

584 **Authentication Mechanisms are Orthogonal to Single Sign-On** Single sign-on is a means by which
 585 a service provider or identity provider may convey to another service provider or
 586 identity provider that the user is in fact authenticated. The means by which the user
 587 was originally authenticated is called the authentication mechanism. Examples of
 588 authentication mechanisms are username with password (*not* HTTP Basic Auth),
 589 certificate-based (for example, via SSL or TLS), Kerberos, etc.

590 **Identity Provider Session State Maintenance** Identity providers need to maintain authentication state
 591 information for principals. This is also known as "local session state maintenance",
 592 where "local" implies "local to the identity provider". There are several mecha-
 593 nisms for maintaining local session state information in the context of HTTP-based
 594 [RFC2616] user agents (commonly known as "web browsers"). Cookies are one
 595 such mechanism and are specified in [RFC2965]. Identity providers use local ses-
 596 sion state information, mapped to the participating user agent (see Figure 18), as the
 597 basis for issuing authentication assertions to service providers who are performing
 598 the "Single Sign-On and Federation" protocol [LibertyBindProf] with the identity
 599 provider. Thus, when the Principal uses his user agent to interact with yet another
 600 service provider, that service provider will send an <AuthnRequest> to the iden-
 601 tity provider. The identity provider will check its local session state information
 602 for that user agent, and return to the service provider an <AuthnResponse> con-
 603 taining an authentication assertion if its local session state information indicates the
 604 user agent's session with the identity provider is presently active.

605 **Credentials** Credentials are relied upon in a number of ways in a single sign-on system and
 606 are often the basis for establishing trust with the credential bearer. Credentials may
 607 represent security-related attributes of the bearer, including the owner's identity.
 608 Sensitive credentials that require special protection, such as private cryptographic
 609 keys, must be protected from unauthorized exposure. Some credentials are intended
 610 to be shared, such as public-key certificates.
 611 **Credentials** Credentials are a general notion of the data necessary to prove an
 612 assertion. For example, in a password-based authentication system, the user name
 613 and password would be considered credentials. However, the use of credentials is
 614 not limited to authentication. Credentials may also be relied upon in the course of
 615 making an authorization decision.
 616 As mentioned above, certain credentials must be kept confidential. However, some
 617 credentials not only need to remain confidential, but also must be integrity-protected
 618 to prevent them from being tampered with or even fabricated. Other credentials,
 619 such as the artifacts described in Section 4.4.3.1, must have the properties of
 620 a nonce. A nonce is a random or nonrepeating value that is included in data
 621 exchanged by a protocol, usually for guaranteeing liveness and thus detecting and
 622 protecting against replay attacks.

623 **Authentication Type, Multitiered Authentication** All authentication assertions should include an
 624 authentication type that indicates the quality of the credentials and the mechanism
 625 used to vet them. Credentials used to authenticate a user or supplied to authorize
 626 a transaction and/or the authentication mechanism used to vet the credentials may
 627 not be of sufficient quality to complete the transaction.
 628 For example, a user initially authenticates to the identity provider using username
 629 and password. The user then attempts to conduct a transaction, for instance, a
 630 bank withdrawal, which requires a stronger form of authentication. In this case the
 631 user must present a stronger assertion of identity, such as a public-key certificate
 632 or something ancillary such as birthdate, mother's maiden name, etc. This act is
 633 *reauthentication* and the overall functionality is *multitiered authentication*. Welding
 634 multitiered authentication can be a policy decision at the service provider and
 635 can be at the discretion of the service provider. Or it might be established as part
 636 of the contractual arrangements of the circle of trust. In this case, the circle of trust
 637 members can agree among themselves upon the trust they put in different authen-
 638 tication types and of each other's authentication assertions. Such an agreement's
 639 form may be similar to today's certificate practice statements (CPS) (for example,
 640 see <http://www.verisign.com/repository/cps20/cps20.pdf>). The information cited in
 641 such a document may include

642 • User identification methods during credentials enrollment
643 • Credentials renewal frequency
644 • Methods for storing and protecting credentials (e.g., smartcard, phone, encrypted file on hard drive)

645 **Note:**

646 While the current Liberty specifications allow service providers, identity providers,
647 and user agents to support authentication using a range of methods, the methods
648 and their associated protocol exchanges are not specified within Liberty documents.
649 Further, the scope of the current Liberty specifications does not include a means for
650 a communicating identity provider and user agent to identify a set of methods that
651 they are both equipped to support. As a result, support for the Liberty specifications
652 is not in itself sufficient to ensure effective interoperability between arbitrary
653 identity providers and user agents using arbitrary methods and must, instead, be
654 complemented with data obtained from other sources.

655 Also, the scope of the current Liberty specifications does not include a means
656 for a service provider to interrogate an identity provider and determine the set
657 of authentication profiles for which a user is registered at that identity provider.
658 As a result, effective service provider selection of specific profiles to authenticate
659 a particular user will require access to out-of-band information describing users'
660 capabilities.

661 For example, members of a given circle of trust may agree that they will label
662 an authentication assertion based on PKI technology and face-to-face user iden-
663 tity verification with substantiating documentation at enrollment time to be of type
664 "Strong." Then, when an identity provider implementing these policies and pro-
665 cedures asserts that a user has logged in using the specified PKI-based authentication
666 mechanism, service providers rely upon said assertion to a certain degree. This
667 degree of reliance is likely different from the degree put into an assertion by an
668 identity provider who uses the same PKI-based authentication mechanism, but who
669 does not claim to subject the user to the same amount of scrutiny at enrollment
670 time. This issue has another dimension: Who performs the reauthentication? An
671 identity provider or the service provider itself? This question is both an imple-
672 mentation and deployment issue and an operational policy issue. Implementations
673 and deployments need to support having either the identity provider or the service
674 provider perform reauthentication when the business considerations dictate it (that
675 is, the operational policy). For example, a circle of trust may decide that the risk
676 factors are too large for having the identity provider perform reauthentication in
677 certain high-value interactions and that the service provider taking on the risk of the
678 interaction must be able to perform the reauthentication.

679 **Mutual Authentication** Another dimension of the authentication type and quality space is mutual au-
680 thentication. For a user authenticating himself to an identity provider, mutual au-
681 thentication implies that the identity provider server authenticates itself with the
682 user as well as vice versa. Mutual authentication is a function of the particular au-
683 thentication mechanism employed. For example, any user authentication performed
684 over SSL or TLS is mutual authentication because the server is authenticated to the
685 client by default with SSL or TLS. This feature can be the basis of some greater as-
686 surance, but does have its set of vulnerabilities. The server may be wielding a bogus
687 certificate, and the user may not adequately inspect it or understand the significance.

688 **Validating Liveness** *Liveness* refers to whether the user who authenticated at time *t0* is the same
 689 user who is about to perform a given operation at time *t1*. For example, a user
 690 may log in and perform various operations and then attempt to perform a given
 691 operation that the service provider considers high-value. The service provider may
 692 initiate reauthentication to attempt to validate that the user operating the system is
 693 still the same user that authenticated originally. Even though such an approach has
 694 many vulnerabilities, that is, it fails completely in the case of a rogue user, it does
 695 at least augment the service provider's audit trail. Therefore, at least some service
 696 providers will want to do it.

697 Authentication assertions from identity providers contain a
 698 <ReauthenticationOnOrAfter> element. If this attribute was specified and
 699 the time of the user request is past the specified reauthentication time, the service
 700 provider should redirect the user back to the identity provider for reauthentication.

701 **Communication Security** A service provider can reject communications with an identity provider for
 702 various reasons. For example, it may be the policy of a service provider to require
 703 that all protocol exchanges between it and the bearer of a credential commence over
 704 a communication protocol that has certain qualities such as bilateral authentication,
 705 integrity protection, and message confidentiality.

706 **4.4.3. Profiles of the Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol**

707 The Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol, as specified in [LibertyProtSchema], defines messages exchanged
 708 between service providers and identity providers. The concrete mapping of these messages to particular transfer
 709 (for example, HTTP) and/or messaging (for example, SOAP) protocols and precise protocol flows are specified in
 710 [LibertyBindProf]. These mappings are called profiles. The Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol specifies three
 711 profiles. The following sections summarize each profile. For a detailed discussion of the common interactions and
 712 processing rules of these profiles and for details about each profile, see [LibertyBindProf].

713 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

714 The Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol and related profiles specify means by which service providers
 715 indicate to identity providers the particular profile they wish to employ. The primary means is the
 716 <lib:ProtocolProfile> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message, which is employed by all pro-
 717 files of the Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol. Note: The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile
 718 employs additional means.

719 **4.4.3.1. Liberty Artifact Profile**

720 The Liberty artifact profile specifies embedding an artifact in a URI exchanged between the identity provider and
 721 service provider via Web redirection and also requires direct communication between the service provider and the
 722 identity provider. The artifact itself is an opaque user handle with which the service provider can query the identity
 723 provider to receive a full SAML assertion. The motivation for this approach is that the artifact can be small enough
 724 in its URI-encoded form to fit in a URI without concern for size limitations. The artifact has the property of being
 725 an opaque, pseudo-random nonce that can be used only once. These properties are countermeasures against replay
 726 attacks. The randomness property protects the artifact from being guessed by an adversary.

727 **4.4.3.2. Liberty Browser POST Profile**

728 Modern browsers that support JavaScript or ECMAScript can perform the redirect by sending an HTML page with
 729 form elements that contain data with a JavaScript or ECMAScript that automatically posts the form. Legacy browsers,
 730 or browsers with scripting disabled, must embed the data within the URI.

731 **Note:**

732 The Liberty browser POST profile embeds an assertion within an HTTP form per the form-POST-based
 733 redirection (see Section 4.1.2). As a result, this profile does not require any direct communication between
 734 the service provider and the identity provider to obtain an assertion. An entire authentication assertion can
 735 be included in the posted HTML form because the size allowances for HTML forms are great enough to
 736 accommodate one.. See Figure 19.

737 **Figure 19. Example of JavaScript-based HTML form autosubmission with hidden fields**

```
738
739      <HTML>
740      <BODY ONLOAD="javascript:document.forms[0].submit()">
741      <FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="www.foobar.com/auth">
742      <INPUT TYPE="HIDDEN" NAME="FOO" VALUE="1234"/>
743      </ FORM>
744      </BODY>
745      </HTML>
```

747 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

748 It must be stressed that Liberty browser POST profile should be supported only in addition to Liberty browser
 749 artifact profile due to its dependence on JavaScript (or ECMAscript).

750 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

751 Implementors and deployers should provide for logging appropriate portions of the authentication assertion.

752 **4.4.3.3. Liberty-Enabled Client and Proxy Profile**

753 The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile specifies interactions between Liberty-enabled clients and/or proxies,
 754 service providers, and identity providers. A Liberty-enabled client is a client that has, or knows how to obtain,
 755 knowledge about the identity provider that the user wishes to use with the service provider. In addition a Liberty-
 756 enabled client receives and sends Liberty messages in the body of HTTP requests and responses using POST, rather
 757 than relying upon HTTP redirects and encoding protocol parameters into URLs. Therefore, Liberty-enabled clients
 758 have no restrictions on the size of the Liberty protocol messages.

759 A Liberty-enabled proxy is a HTTP proxy (typically a WAP gateway) that emulates a Liberty-enabled client.

760 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

761 The differences between this profile and the other Liberty POST-based profiles are that:

- 762 • It does not rely upon HTTP redirects.
- 763 • The interactions between the user agent and the identity provider are SOAP-based.
- 764 • The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile includes Liberty-specified HTTP headers in the protocol
 765 messages it sends, signifying to identity providers and service providers that it is Liberty-enabled and thus can
 766 support capabilities beyond those supported by common non-Liberty-enabled user agents.

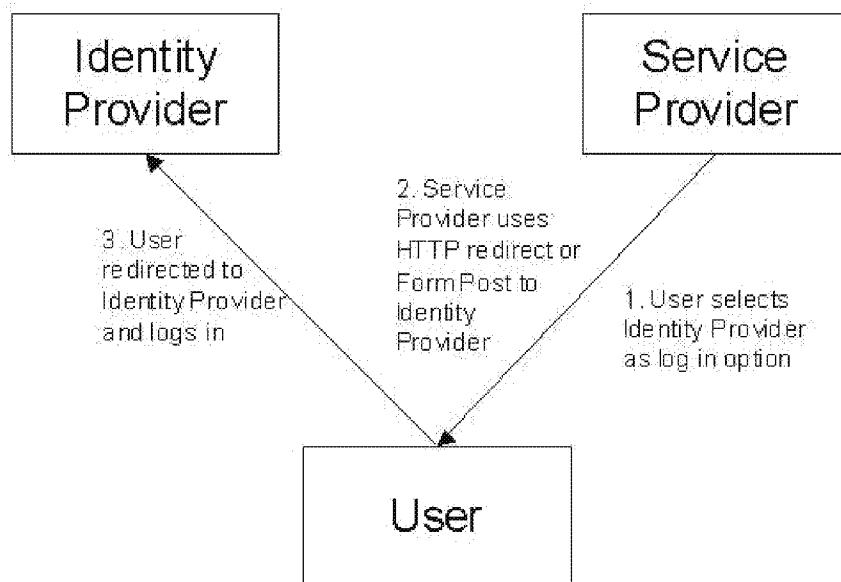
767 **4.4.3.4. Single Sign-On Protocol Flow Example: Liberty Artifact Profile**

768 The first step in the single sign-on process in a Liberty artifact profile is that the user goes to a service provider and
 769 chooses to log in via the user's preferred identity provider. This login is accomplished by selecting the preferred
 770 identity provider from a list presented on the service provider's login page.

771 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

772 The service provider may discover the preferred identity provider via the identity provider introduction
 773 mechanism discussed in Section 4.5 or, in the case of a Liberty-enabled client or proxy, by some other
 774 implementation-specific and unspecified means.

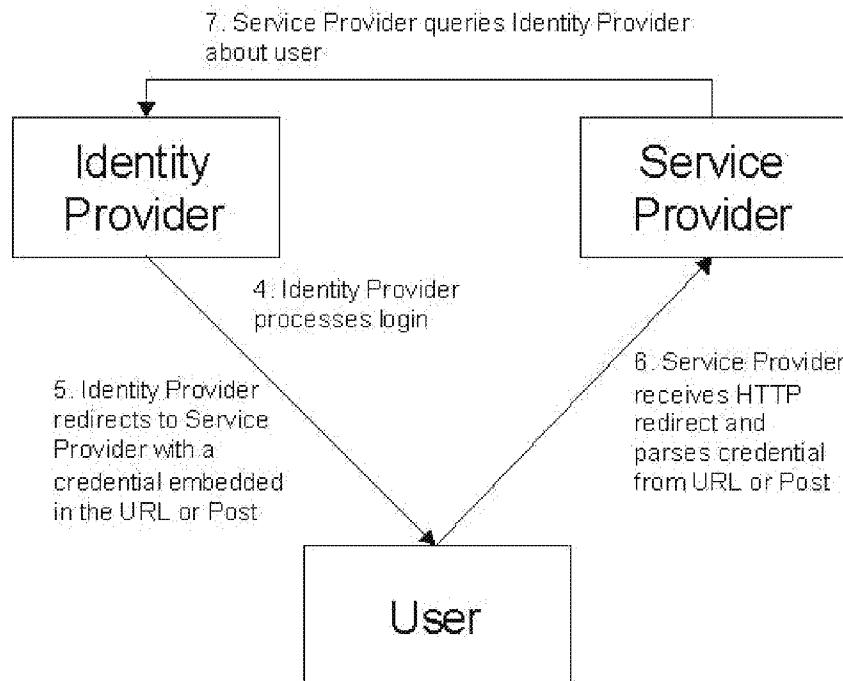
775 Once the user selects the identity provider, the user's browser is redirected to the identity provider with an embedded
 776 parameter indicating the originating service provider. The user can then log in to the identity provider as the user
 777 normally would. See Figure 20.



778

779 **Figure 20. Single sign-on using HTTP redirect / form POST (1 of 2)**

780 The identity provider then processes the login as normal and, upon successful login, redirects the user's browser to the
 781 originating service provider with a transient, encrypted credential, called an *artifact*, embedded within the URI. The
 782 service provider then parses the artifact from the URI and directly uses it to query the identity provider about the user.
 783 In its response, the identity provider vouches for the user, and the service provider may then establish a local notion of
 784 session state. See Figure 21.



785

786

Figure 21. Single sign-on using HTTP redirect / form POST (2 of 2)

787 4.4.4. Interactions Between Identity Providers

788 In some cases, a Principal may have authenticated with one identity provider, but then be redirected to a second one
 789 by a service provider. This may occur either because that service provider has no direct trust relationship with the
 790 authenticating identity provider, some previously indicated preference to use the requested identity provider for single
 791 sign-on, or the user's direct choice.

792 If the requested identity provider trusts the authenticating identity provider then it may choose to use the Liberty
 793 protocols and profiles to initiate a single sign-on request of its own to that provider, the result of which will be used to
 794 generate a response to the originally-requesting service provider.

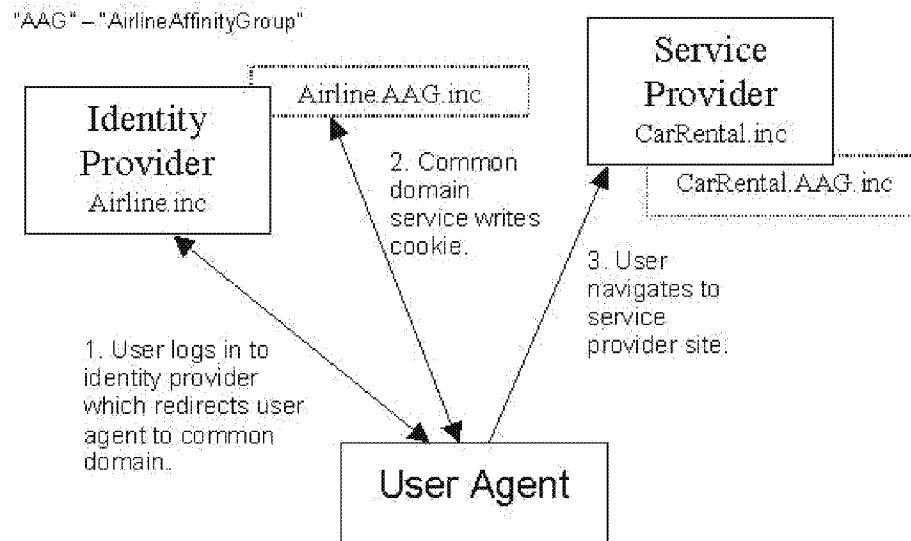
795 In so doing, the user may be relayed between more than one provider during a single sign-on transaction, in order to
 796 minimize the need for direct user interaction. An additional consequence is that service providers can be exposed to,
 797 but also take advantage of, identity providers that may be outside of their circles of trust. This more strongly models
 798 real world interactions between sites, and allows more flexible and convenient user interactions.

799 4.5. Principal Identity Provider Introduction

800 In circle of trusts having more than one identity provider, service providers need a means to discover which identity
 801 providers a user is using. Ideally, an identity provider could write a cookie that a service provider could read. However,
 802 due to the cookie constraint outlined in Section 4.1.3, an identity provider in one DNS domain has no standardized
 803 way to write a cookie that a service provider in another DNS domain can read.

804 A solution to this introduction problem is to use a domain common to the circle of trust in question and thus accessible
 805 to all parties, for example, AirlineAffinityGroup.inc or AAG.inc. Entries within this DNS domain will point to IP
 806 addresses specified by each affinity group member. For example, service provider CarRental.inc might receive a third-
 807 level domain "CarRental.AAG.inc" pointing to an IP address specified by CarRental.inc. The machines hosting this
 808 common domain service would be stateless. They would simply read and write cookies based on parameters passed
 809 within redirect URLs. This is one of several methods suggested for setting a common cookie in Section 3.6.2 of
 810 [LibertyBindProf].

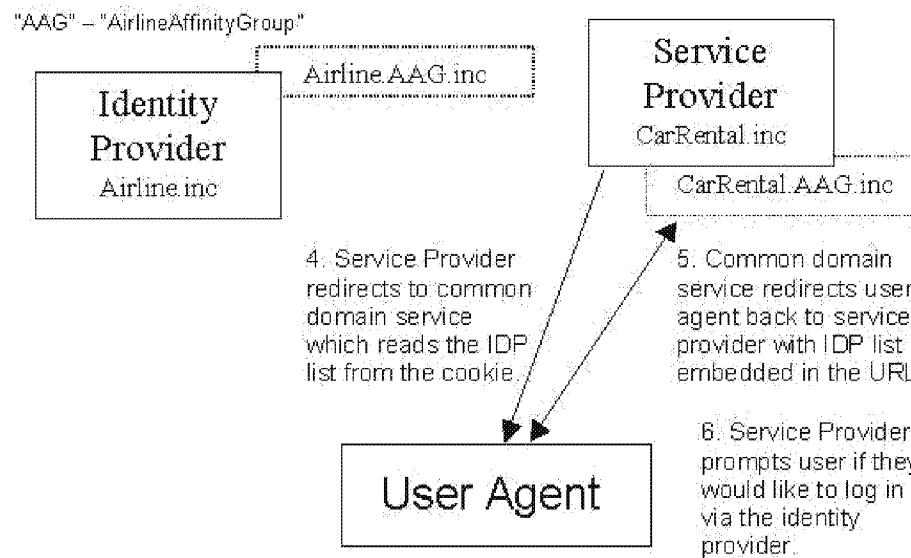
811 When a user authenticates with an identity provider, the identity provider would redirect the user's browser to the
 812 identity provider's instance of a common domain service with a parameter indicating that the user is using that identity
 813 provider. The common domain service writes a cookie with that preference and redirects the user's browser back to
 814 the identity provider. Then, the user can navigate to a service provider within the circle of trust. See Figure 22.



815

Figure 22. Using a common domain to facilitate introductions (1 of 2)

816 When the user navigates to a service provider within the circle of trust, the service provider can redirect the user's
 817 browser to its instance of the common domain service, which reads the cookie and redirects the user's browser back
 818 to the service provider with the user's identity provider embedded in the URL and thus available to service provider
 819 systems operating within the service provider's typical DNS domain. See Figure 23.



821

Figure 23. Using a common domain to facilitate introductions (2 of 2)

822 The service provider now knows with which identity provider the user has authenticated within its circle of trust and
 823 can engage in further Liberty protocol operations with that identity provider, for example, single sign-on, on the user's
 824 behalf.

826 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

827 Common Domain Cookie Implications: The identity provider can create either a session common domain
 828 cookie (for example, this session only; in practice having ephemeral behavior,
 829 see [RFC2965]) or a persistent common domain cookie. The implications with
 830 a session cookie are that it will disappear from the user agent cookie cache when
 831 the user logs out (although this action would have to be explicitly implemented)
 832 or when the user agent is exited. This feature may inconvenience some users.
 833 However, whether to use a session or a persistent cookie could be materialized to
 834 the user at identity provider login time in the form of a Remember Me checkbox. If
 835 not checked, a session cookie is used; if checked, a persistent one is used.
 836 A user security implication of the persistent cookie is that if another person
 837 uses the machine, even if the user agent had been exited, the persistent common
 838 domain cookie is still present—indeed all persistent cookies are present. See the
 839 policy/security note in Section 4.1.3.
 840 However, if the only information contained in a common domain cookie is a
 841 list of identity providers—that is, it does not contain any personally identifiable
 842 information or authentication information, then the resultant security risk to the
 843 user from inadvertent disclosure is low.

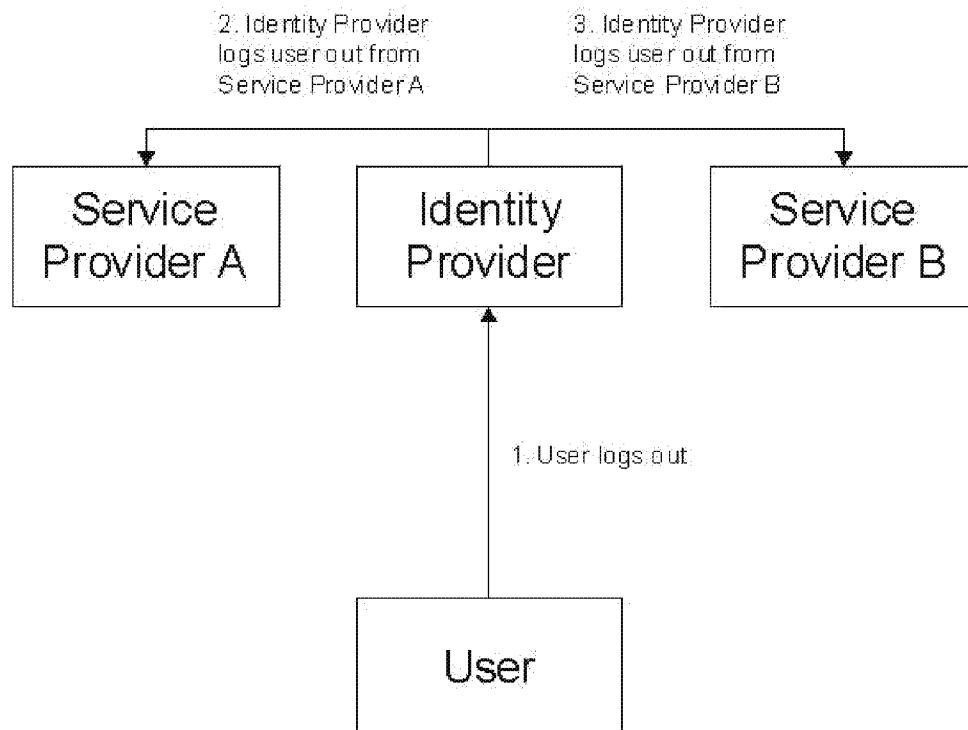
844 Common Domain Cookie Processing: The manner in which the common domain cookie writing service
 845 manipulates the common domain cookie is specified in 3.6.2 of [LibertyBindProf].
 846 The identity provider with which the user most recently authenticated should be
 847 the last one in the list of identity providers in the cookie. However, the manner in
 848 which service providers interpret the common domain cookie and display choices
 849 to the user is unspecified. This lack of specificity implies that service providers
 850 may approach it in various ways. One way is to display identity providers in a list
 851 ordered in reverse to the order in the common domain cookie. This approach will
 852 nominally be in order of most-recently used if the common domain cookie writing
 853 service is adhering to the above guideline. Or, the service provider may display
 854 only the last identity provider in the list. Or the service provider may display the
 855 identity providers in some other order, if needed for some reason(s).

856 **4.6. Single Logout**

857 The Single Logout Protocol and related profiles synchronize session logout functionality across all sessions that were
 858 authenticated by a particular identity provider. The single logout can be initiated at either the identity provider (see
 859 Figure 24) or the service provider (see Figure 25). In either case, the identity provider will then communicate a logout
 860 request to each service provider with which it has established a session for the user.

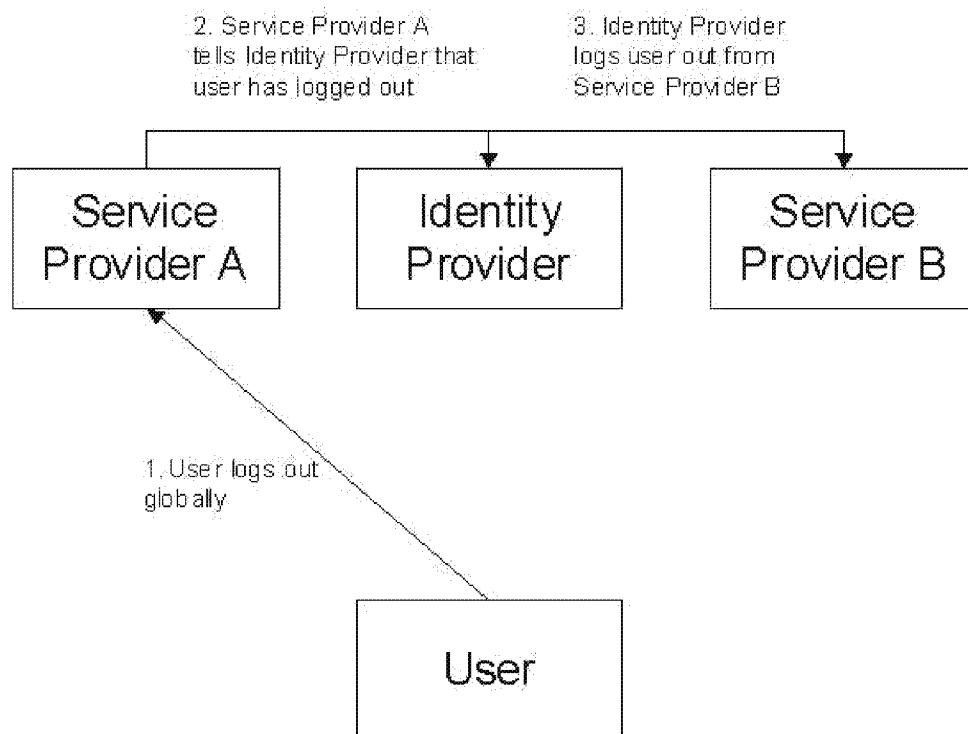
861 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

862 When using a single sign-on system, it is critical that, when users log out at a service provider, their
 863 expectations are set about whether they are logging out from the identity provider or only that particular
 864 service provider. It may be necessary to provide both Single Logout and Site Logout buttons or links in
 865 Websites so that users' expectations are set. However, site logout may be regarded to come into play only
 866 where users have to take a positive action to use their current authentication assertion at a site that they have
 867 previously associated with their single sign-on.



868

869

Figure 24. Single logout from an identity provider

870

871

Figure 25. Single logout from a service provider

872 4.6.1. Single Logout Profiles

873 [LibertyBindProf] specifies three overall profiles for communicating the logout request among service providers and
874 an identity provider:

875 • **HTTP-Redirect-Based:** on using HTTP 302 redirects

876 • **HTTP-GET-Based:** Relies on using HTTP GET requests of IMG tags

877 • **SOAP/HTTP-Based:** Relies on SOAP over HTTP messaging

878 All three profiles may be initiated at an identity provider. Only the first and the last may be initiated at a service
879 provider. See [LibertyBindProf] for details.

880 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

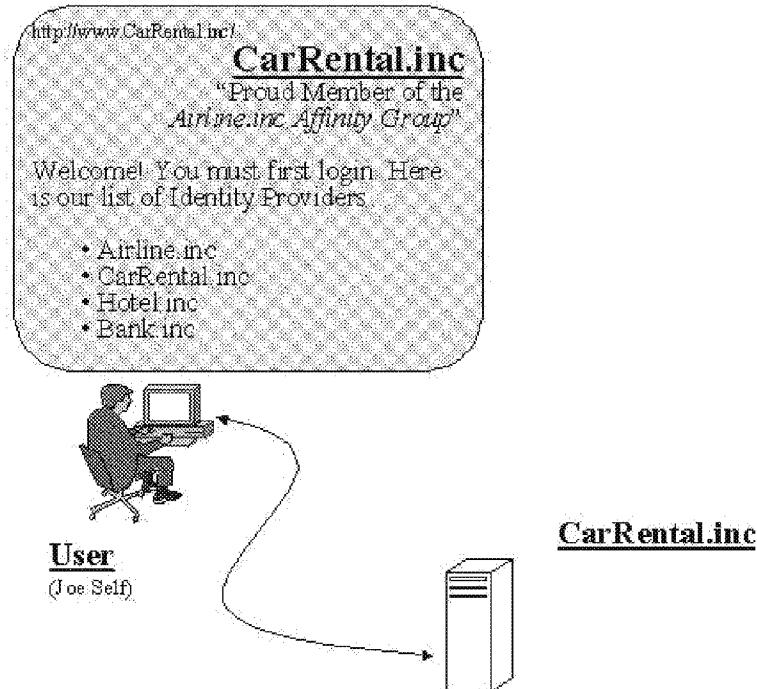
881 The user-perceivable salient difference between the single logout profiles is that with the HTTP-redirect-based
882 and SOAP/HTTP-based profiles, the Webpage from which the user initiates the logout process will
883 remain in place as the logout process occurs (that is, each service provider is contacted in turn), while with
884 the HTTP-GET-based profile, the identity provider has the opportunity to reload images (one per service
885 provider, for example, completion check marks) on the viewed Webpage as the logout process proceeds.

886 4.7. Example User Experience Scenarios

887 This section presents several example user experience scenarios based upon the federation, introduction, and single
888 sign-on facets of the Liberty Version 1.2 architecture. The intent is to illustrate the more subtle aspects of the user
889 experience at login time and to illustrate common Web-specific user interface techniques that may be employed in
890 prompting for, and collecting, the user's credentials. Specific policy and security considerations are called out.

891 4.7.1. Scenario: Not Logged in Anywhere, No Common Domain Cookie

892 In this scenario, Joe Self is not logged in at any Website, does not have a common domain cookie (for example, he
893 restarted his user agent and/or flushed the cookie cache), and surfs to CarRental.inc. without first visiting his identity
894 provider, Airline.inc.



895

896 **Figure 26.** User arrives at service provider's Website without any authentication evidence or common domain cookie

897 CarRental.inc presents Joe Self with a welcome page listing identity providers from which he can select (see
898 Figure 26). Joe Self selects Airline.inc from the list.

899 Section 4.7.1.1 through Section 4.7.1.3 illustrate three different, plausible, Web-specific user interface techniques
900 CarRental.inc, working in concert with Airline.inc, may use to facilitate Joe Self's login:

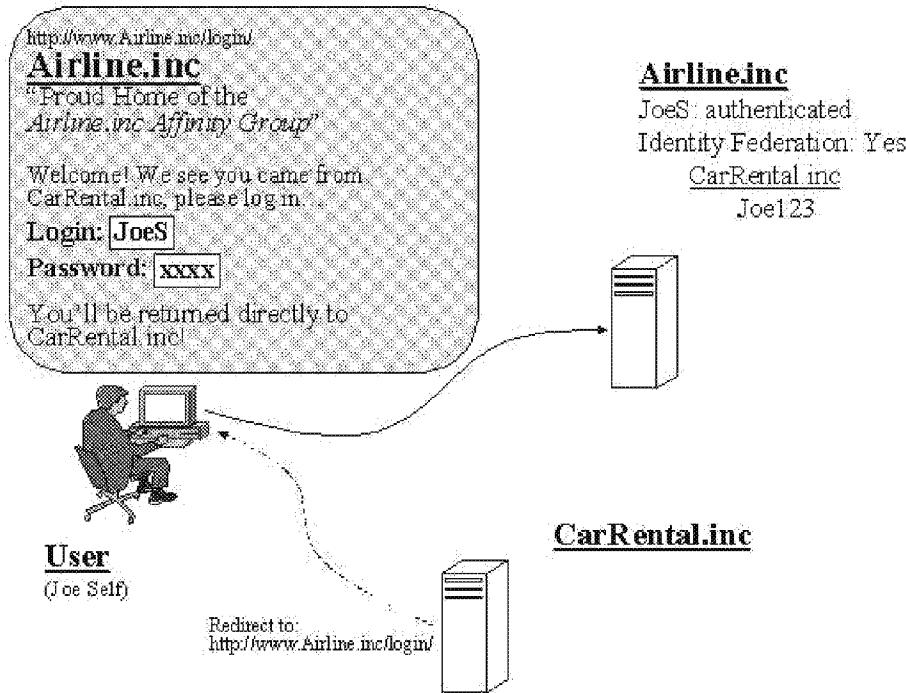
- 901 • Redirect to identity provider Website
- 902 • Identity provider dialog box
- 903 • Embedded form

904 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

905 These user interface techniques are commonly employed in Web-based systems. They are not particular to,
 906 or specified by, Liberty. They are presented for illustrative purposes only.

907 **4.7.1.1. Login via Redirect to Identity Provider Website**

908 With login via redirect to the identity provider's Website, service providers provide direct links, likely effected via
 909 redirects, to the identity provider's appropriate login page. Joe Self's browser will display an identity provider's
 910 Webpage (see Figure 27); and upon successful login, his browser will be redirected back to the service provider's
 911 Website where Joe Self will be provided access (see Figure 30).



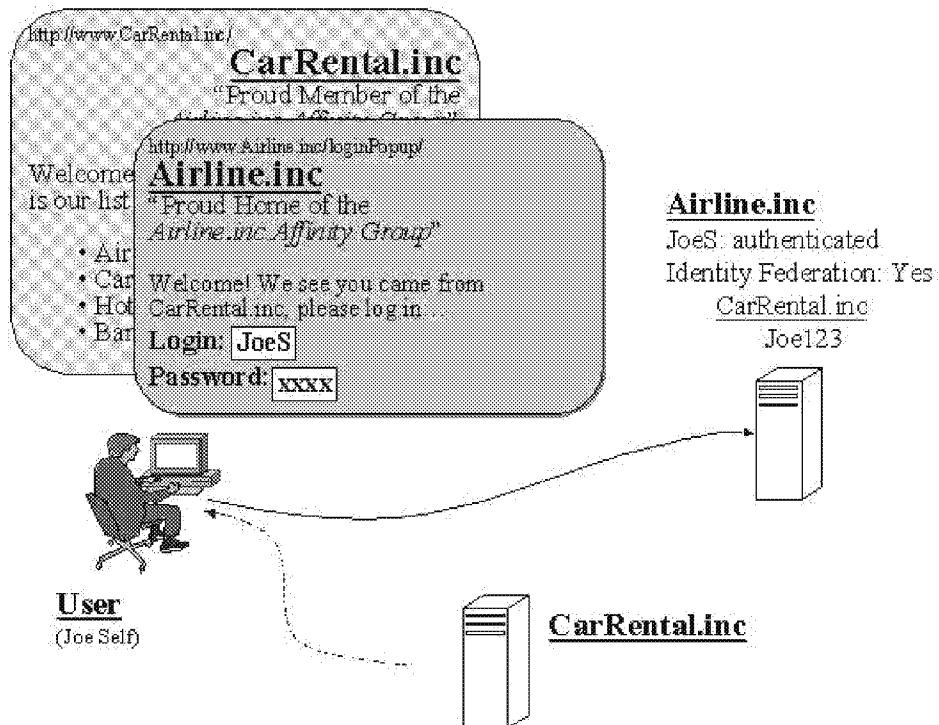
912

913 **Figure 27. User arrives at service provider's Website without any authentication evidence or common domain cookie**914 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

915 Service provider redirects to identity provider's login page.

916 **4.7.1.2. Login via Identity Provider Dialog Box**

917 With login via a dialog box from the identity provider, the links on the service provider's Webpage invoke a dialog or
 918 popup box. Joe Self's browser will display an identity provider popup (see Figure 28); and upon successful login, the
 919 popup box will close, and Joe Self will be provided access at the service provider's Website (see Figure 30).



920

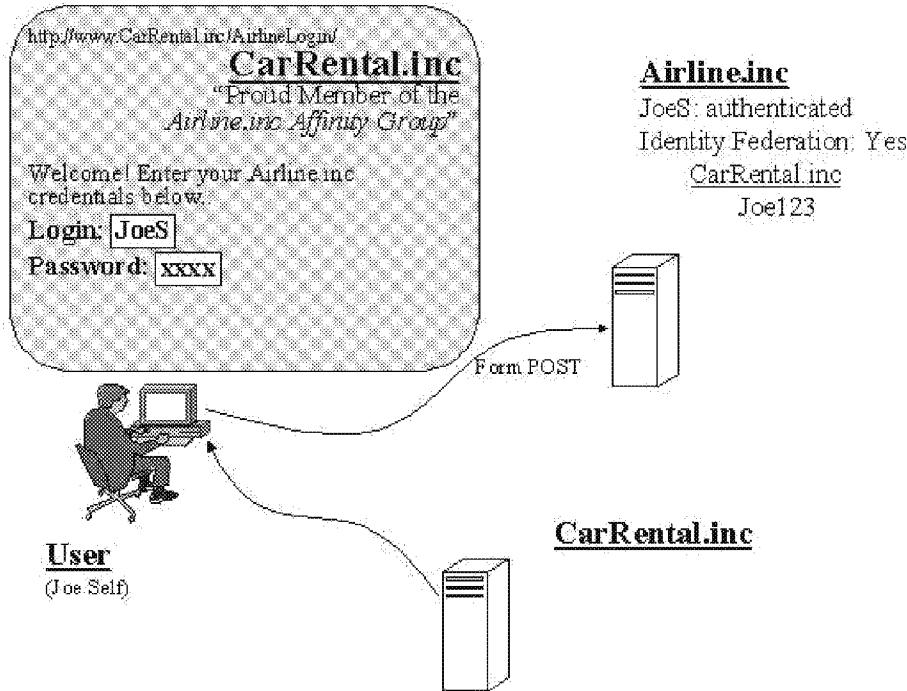
921

Figure 28. Service provider invokes dialog or popup box from identity provider.**922 POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

923 Login via a dialog box from the identity provider is relatively secure in that the user reveals his credentials
 924 directly to the identity provider. Of course, the usual security considerations surrounding login and
 925 authentication events apply.

926 4.7.1.3. Login via Embedded Form

927 With login via embedded form, the links on the service provider's Webpage cause the service provider to display
 928 embedded login forms. In other words, the displayed page comes from the service provider, but when Joe Self presses
 929 the Submit button, the information is conveyed to the identity provider, typically via POST (see Figure 20). To Joe
 930 Self, it appears as if he has not left the service provider's Webpages. Upon successful login, Joe Self will be provided
 931 access at the service provider's Website (see Figure 30).



932

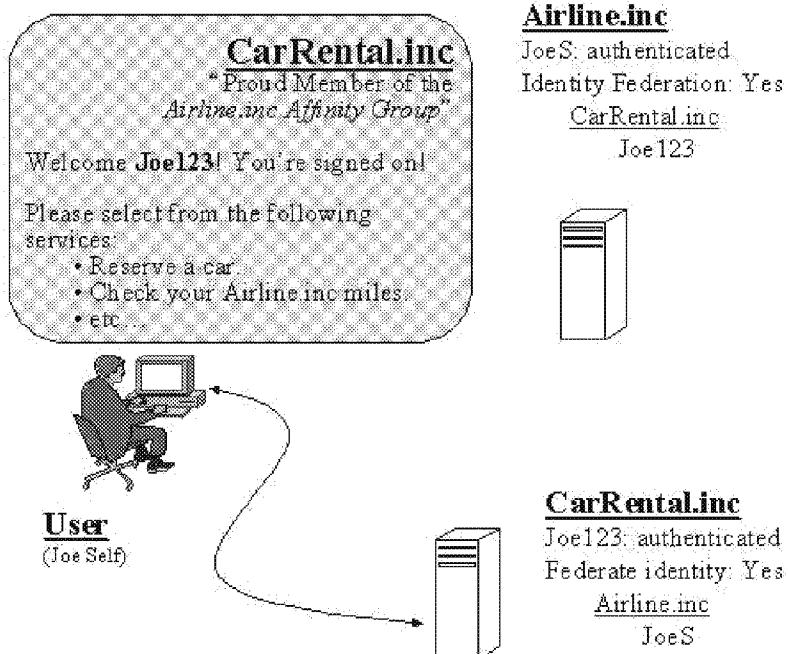
933

Figure 29. Login via embedded form**934 POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

935 Although users may like the seamlessness of this embedded form mechanism and deployers will like that the
 936 user does not leave their Website, it has serious policy and security considerations. In this mechanism, the
 937 user may be revealing his identity provider credentials to the service provider in cleartext. This is because
 938 the service provider controls the actual code implementing both the page and the embedded form and thus
 939 can conceivably capture users' credentials. In this way, privacy surrounding the user's identity provider
 940 account may be compromised by such a rogue service provider, who could then wield those credentials and
 941 impersonate the user. Because of this, when using authentication via embedded form, deployers may want to
 942 consider appropriate contract terms between identity providers and service providers to address this risk.

943 4.7.1.4. The User is Logged in at CarRental.inc

944 CarRental.inc and Airline.inc then work in conjunction to effect login, and the CarRental.inc Website establishes a
 945 session based upon Joe Self's identity federation with Airline.inc (see Figure 30).



946

947

Figure 30. Login via embedded form

948 4.7.2. Scenario: Not Logged in Anywhere, Has a Common Domain Cookie

949 This scenario is similar the prior one. The only difference is that Joe Self's browser already has a common domain
 950 cookie cached. Therefore, when he arrives at a CarRental.inc Webpage, CarRental.inc will immediately know with
 951 which identity provider Joe Self is affiliated (Airline.inc in this case). It can immediately perform login via one of the
 952 three mechanisms outlined in the prior example or may prompt the user first.

953 POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

954 Implementors and deployers should make allowance for the user to decide whether to immediately authen-
 955 ticate with the identity provider or be offered the chance to decline and authenticate either locally with the
 956 service provider or select from the service provider's list of affiliated identity providers.

957 4.7.3. Scenario: Logged in, Has a Common Domain Cookie

958 This scenario is illustrated in 2.2.

959 References**960 Informative**

961 [LibertyBindProf] Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, Champagne, Darryl, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Bindings and
962 Profiles Specification," Version 1.2-errata-v2.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004).
963 <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>

964 [LibertyProtSchema] Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification," Version
965 1.2-errata-v3.0, Liberty Alliance Project (14 December 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>

966 [LibertyAuthnContext] Madsen, Paul, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Authentication Context Specification," Version 1.3, Liberty
967 Alliance Project (14 December 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>

968 [LibertyMetadata] Davis, Peter, eds. "Liberty Metadata Description and Discovery Specification," Version 1.1, Liberty
969 Alliance Project (14 December 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>

970 [LibertyGlossary] "Liberty Technical Glossary," Version 1.4, Liberty Alliance Project (14 Dec 2004).
971 <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Hodges, Jeff, eds.

972 [LibertyImplGuide] "Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines," Version 1.2, Liberty Alliance Project (18 April
973 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Thompson, Peter, Champagne, Darryl, eds.

974 [SAMLBind] Mishra, Prateek, eds. (05 November 2002). "Bindings and Profiles for the OASIS Security Assertion
975 Markup Language (SAML)," Version 1.0, OASIS Standard, Organization for the Advancement of Structured
976 Information Standards <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/security/#documents>

977 [RFC1738] Berners-Lee, T., Masinter, L., McCahill, M., eds. (December 1994). "Uniform Resource Locators (URL),"
978 RFC 1738., Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1738.txt> [December 1994].

979 [RFC2119] Bradner, S., eds. "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels," RFC 2119, The Internet
980 Engineering Task Force (March 1997). <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt> [March 1997].

981 [RFC2965] Kristol, D., Montulli, L., eds. (October 2000). "HTTP State Management Mechanism," RFC 2965.,
982 Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2965.txt> [October 2000].

983 [RFC2616] Fielding, R., Gettys, J., Mogul, J., Frystyk, H., Masinter, L., Leach, P., Berners-Lee, T., eds. (June
984 1999). "Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.1," RFC 2616, The Internet Engineering Task Force
985 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2616.txt> [June 1999].

986 [RFC2396] Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., Masinter, L., eds. (August 1998). "Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI):
987 Generic Syntax," RFC 2396, The Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2396.txt>
988 [August 1998].

989 [SOAPv1.1] "Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1," Box, Don, Ehnebuske, David , Kakivaya, Gopal, Layman,
990 Andrew, Mendelsohn, Noah, Nielsen, Henrik Frystyk, Winer, Dave, eds. World Wide Web Consortium W3C
991 Note (08 May 2000). <http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/NOTE-SOAP-20000508/>

EXHIBIT 4

Liberty Alliance Project:

Version: 1.2-errata-v2.0



Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification

Version: 1.2-errata-v2.0

Editors:

Scott Cantor, Internet2, The Ohio State University

John Kemp, IEEE-ISTO

Darryl Champagne, IEEE-ISTO

Contributors:

Robert Aarts, Nokia Corporation

Bronislav Kavsan, RSA Security Inc.

Thomas Wason, IEEE-ISTO

Abstract:

Specification of the Liberty Alliance Project core profiles and bindings. This specification defines the bindings and profiles of the Liberty protocols and messages to HTTP-based communication frameworks. This specification relies on the SAML core framework in SAML Core V1.1 and makes use of adaptations of the SAML profiles in SAML Bindings V1.1.

Filename: draft-liberty-idff-bindings-profiles-1.2-errata-v2.0.pdf

1

Notice

2 This document has been prepared by Sponsors of the Liberty Alliance. Permission is hereby granted to use the
 3 document solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works
 4 of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this document for other uses must contact
 5 the Liberty Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.

6 Implementation of certain elements of this document may require licenses under third party intellectual property
 7 rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The Sponsors of and any other contributors to the Specification are
 8 not, and shall not be held responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party
 9 intellectual property rights. **This Specification is provided "AS IS", and no participant in the Liberty Alliance**
10 makes any warranty of any kind, express or implied, including any implied warranties of merchantability,
11 non-infringement of third party intellectual property rights, and fitness for a particular purpose. Implementors
 12 of this Specification are advised to review the Liberty Alliance Project's website (<http://www.projectliberty.org/>) for
 13 information concerning any Necessary Claims Disclosure Notices that have been received by the Liberty Alliance
 14 Management Board.

15 Copyright ● 2004 ActivCard; America Online, Inc.; American Express Travel Related Services; Axalto; Bank of
 16 America Corporation; Bell Canada; Cingular Wireless; Cisco Systems, Inc.; Communicator, Inc.; Deloitte & Touche
 17 LLP; Earthlink, Inc.; Electronic Data Systems, Inc.; Entrust, Inc.; Epok, Inc.; Ericsson; Fidelity Investments; France
 18 Telecom; Gemplus; General Motors; Hewlett-Packard Company; i2 Technologies, Inc.; Internet2; Intuit Inc.;
 19 MasterCard International; NEC Corporation; Netegrity, Inc.; NeuStar, Inc.; Nextel Communications; Nippon
 20 Telegraph and Telephone Corporation; Nokia Corporation; Novell, Inc.; NTT DoCoMo, Inc.; OneName Corporation;
 21 Openwave Systems Inc.; Phaos Technology; Ping Identity Corporation; PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP; RegistryPro,
 22 Inc.; RSA Security Inc; Sabre Holdings Corporation; SAP AG; SchlumbergerSema; Sigaba; SK Telecom; Sony
 23 Corporation; Sun Microsystems, Inc.; Symlabs, Inc.; Trustgenix; United Airlines; VeriSign, Inc.; Visa International;
 24 Vodafone Group Plc; Wave Systems. All rights reserved.

25 Liberty Alliance Project
 26 Licensing Administrator
 27 c/o IEEE-ISTO
 28 445 Hoes Lane
 29 Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331, USA
 30 info@projectliberty.org

31 **Contents**

32	1. Introduction	4
33	2. Protocol Bindings	5
34	3. Profiles	11
35	4. Security Considerations	62
36	References	69

37 1. Introduction

38 This specification defines the bindings and profiles of the Liberty protocols and messages to HTTP-based communication frameworks. This specification relies on the SAML core framework in [SAMLCore11] and makes use of adaptations of the SAML profiles in [SAMLBind11]. A separate specification, [LibertyProtSchema], is used to define the Liberty protocols and messages used within the profiles. Definitions for Liberty-specific terms can be found in [LibertyGlossary].

43 1.1. Notation

44 The key words "MUST," "MUST NOT," "REQUIRED," "SHALL," "SHALL NOT," "SHOULD," "SHOULD NOT," "RECOMMENDED," "MAY," and "OPTIONAL" in this specification are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119]:
45 "they MUST only be used where it is actually required for interoperation or to limit behavior which has potential for
46 causing harm (e.g., limiting retransmissions)."

48 These keywords are thus capitalized when used to unambiguously specify requirements over protocol and application
49 features and behavior that affect the interoperability and security of implementations. When these words are not
50 capitalized, they are meant in their natural-language sense.

51 Listings of productions or other normative code appear like this.

52 Example code listings appear like this.

53 **Note:**

54 Non-normative notes and explanations appear like this.

55 Conventional XML namespace prefixes are used throughout this specification to stand for their respective namespaces
56 as follows, regardless of whether a namespace declaration is present in the example:

57 XML Namespace Conventions

- 58 • The prefix `lib:` stands for the Liberty namespace `urn:liberty:idff:2003-08`
- 59 • The prefix `saml:` stands for the SAML assertion namespace (see [SAMLCore]).
- 60 • The prefix `samlp:` stands for the SAML request-response protocol namespace (see [SAMLCore]).
- 61 • The prefix `ds:` stands for the W3C XML signature namespace, `http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#`
- 62 • The prefix `xenc:` stands for the W3C XML encryption namespace, `http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#`
- 63 • The prefix `SOAP-ENV:` stands for the SOAP 1.1 namespace, `http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope`
64 (see [SOAP1.1]).

65 Terminology from [RFC2396] is used to describe components of an HTTP URL. An HTTP URL has the following
66 form:

67 `<scheme>://<authority><path>?<query>`

68 Sections in this document specify certain portions of the `<query>` component of the URL. Ellipses (...) are used to
69 indicate additional, but unspecified, portions of the `<query>` component.

70 **2. Protocol Bindings**

71 The Liberty protocol bindings are defined in this section.

72 **2.1. SOAP Binding for Liberty**

73 The Liberty SOAP binding defines how to use SOAP to send and receive Liberty protocol requests and responses using
74 SOAP 1.1 messages.

75 Like Liberty, SOAP can be used over multiple underlying transports. This binding has protocol-independent aspects,
76 but REQUIRES the use of SOAP over HTTP.

77 **2.1.1. Protocol-Independent Aspects of the Liberty SOAP Binding**

78 The following sections define aspects of the Liberty SOAP binding that are independent of the underlying protocol,
79 such as HTTP, on which the SOAP messages are transported.

80 **2.1.1.1. Basic Operation**

81 SOAP messages consist of three elements: an envelope, header data, and a message body. Liberty request-response
82 protocol elements MUST be enclosed within the SOAP message body.

83 SOAP 1.1 also defines an optional data encoding system. This system is not used within the Liberty SOAP binding.
84 This means that SAML messages can be transported using SOAP without re-encoding from the "standard" Liberty
85 schemas to one based on the SOAP encoding.

86 The specific profile determines the type of messages that can be sent or received. The system model used for Liberty
87 conversations over SOAP may be a simple request-response model, or it may be a more complex interaction that
88 includes HTML forms or other input mechanisms that interact with a Principal.

89 This Liberty specification defines constraints. Liberty protocol messages MUST be sent as the top level element in
90 the SOAP body. The requester or responder MUST NOT include more than one Liberty protocol message in a single
91 SOAP message. The requester or responder MUST NOT include any additional XML elements in the SOAP body.
92 Additionally, if a SOAP fault code is returned, then no Liberty protocol message may appear in the SOAP body. SOAP
93 faults MUST only be used for signaling non-Liberty-related errors.

94 [SOAPv1.1] references an early draft of the XML Schema specification including an obsolete namespace. Originators
95 of Liberty SOAP messages SHOULD generate SOAP messages referencing only the final XML schema namespace.
96 Receivers of Liberty SOAP messages MUST be able to process both the XML schema namespace used in [SOAPv1.1]
97 and the final XML schema namespace.

98 **2.1.1.2. SOAP Headers**

99 A Liberty SOAP message MAY contain arbitrary headers added to the SOAP message. This binding does not define
100 any additional SOAP headers.

101 Liberty SOAP messages MUST NOT require that any headers be understood for correct interpretation of the message.

102 **2.1.1.3. Authentication**

103 Authentication of Liberty messages is OPTIONAL and depends on the environment of use. Authentication protocols
104 available from the underlying substrate protocol MAY be utilized to provide authentication. Section 2.1.2.1 describes
105 authentication in the SOAP-over-HTTP environment.

106 **2.1.1.4. Message Integrity**

107 Message integrity of Liberty messages is OPTIONAL and depends on the environment of use. The security layer
 108 in the underlying substrate protocol MAY be used to ensure message integrity. Section 2.1.2.2 describes support for
 109 message integrity in the SOAP-over-HTTP environment.

110 **2.1.1.5. Confidentiality**

111 Confidentiality of Liberty messages is OPTIONAL and depends on the environment of use. The security layer in the
 112 underlying substrate protocol MAY be used to ensure message confidentiality. Section 2.1.2.3 describes support for
 113 confidentiality in the SOAP over HTTP environment.

114 **2.1.2. Use of SOAP over HTTP**

115 This section describes certain specifics of using SOAP over HTTP, including HTTP headers, error reporting,
 116 authentication, message integrity and confidentiality.

117 The HTTP binding for SOAP is described in [SOAPv1.1] §6.0. It requires the use of a SOAPAction header as part of
 118 a SOAP HTTP request. Processing of a Liberty message MUST NOT depend on the value of this header. A Liberty
 119 message MAY set the value of its SOAPAction header as follows:

120 urn:liberty:soap-action
 121
 122
 123

124 **2.1.2.1. Authentication**

125 Liberty SOAP message endpoints MUST implement the following authentication methods:

- 126 1. No client or server authentication.
- 127 2. HTTP basic client authentication [RFC2617] with and without SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0.
- 128 3. HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0 (see Section 6) server authentication with a server-side certificate.
- 129 4. HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0 client authentication with a client-side certificate.

130 If a message receiver uses SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0, it MUST use a server-side certificate.

131 **2.1.2.2. Message Integrity**

132 When message integrity needs to be guaranteed, messages MUST be sent with HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS1.0 with a
 133 server-side certificate.

134 **2.1.2.3. Message Confidentiality**

135 When message confidentiality is required, messages MUST be sent with HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0 with a
 136 server-side certificate.

137 **2.1.2.4. Security Considerations**

138 Before deployment in a given profile, each combination of authentication, message integrity and confidentiality
 139 mechanisms SHOULD be analyzed for vulnerability in the context of the profile.

140 [RFC2617] describes possible attacks in the HTTP environment when basic or message-digest authentication schemes
 141 are used.

142 **2.1.2.5. Error Reporting**

143 A message receiver that refuses to perform a message exchange SHOULD return a "403 Forbidden" response. In this
144 case, the content of the HTTP body is not significant.

145 As described in [SOAPv1.1] § 6.2, in the case of a SOAP error while processing a SOAP request, the SOAP HTTP server
146 MUST return a "500 Internal Server Error" response and include a SOAP message in the response with a SOAP
147 fault element. This type of error SHOULD be returned for SOAP-related errors detected before control is passed to
148 the Liberty message processor, or when the SOAP processor reports an internal error (for example, the SOAP XML
149 namespace is incorrect).

150 In the case of a Liberty processing error, the SOAP HTTP server MUST respond with "200 OK" and include a profile-
151 specified response as the only child of the <SOAP-ENV:Body> element.

152 2.1.2.6. Example of Message Exchange Using SOAP over HTTP

153 The following is an example of the SOAP exchange for the single sign-on browser artifact profile requesting an
154 authentication assertion (the left margin white space added for legibility invalidates the signature).

```

155
156 POST /authn HTTP/1.1
157 Host: idp.example.com
158 Content-type: text/xml
159 Content-length: nnnn
160 <soap-env:Envelope
161   xmlns:soap-env="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/scap/envelope/">
162   <soap-env:Header/>
163   <soap-env:Body>
164     <samlp:Request xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
165       xmlns:lib="urn:liberty:idff:2003-08"
166       xmlns:saml="urn:casis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:assertion"
167       xmlns:samlp="urn:casis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
168       xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
169       IssueInstant="2002-12-12T10:08:56Z"
170       MajorVersion="1"
171       MinorVersion="1"
172       RequestID="e4d71c43-c89a-426b-853e-a2b0c14a5ed8"
173       Id="ericssonb6dc3636-f2ad-42d1-9427-220f2cf70ec1">
174     <ds:Signature xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
175       <ds:SignedInfo>
176         <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
177           Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
178         </ds:CanonicalizationMethod>
179         <ds:SignatureMethod
180           Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1">
181         </ds:SignatureMethod>
182         <ds:Reference URI="#ericssonb6dc3636-f2ad-42d1-9427-220f2cf70ec1">
183           <ds:Transforms>
184             <ds:Transform
185               Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#enveloped-signature">
186             </ds:Transform>
187             <ds:Transform
188               Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
189             </ds:Transform>
190           </ds:Transforms>
191           <ds:DigestMethod
192             Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1">
193           </ds:DigestMethod>
194           <ds:DigestValue>+k6Tno`Gk=PK7` pUQVYokPdwkUE=</ds:DigestValue>
195         </ds:Reference>
196       </ds:SignedInfo>
197       <ds:SignatureValue>
198         wXJMVoPOlV1jFnWJPyONqPbGqm8A1+/2bgbNzF'4L4LMu4yEcRtttLdPPPTbhvhwkwlXjLBNuOPumQ
199         bYEyiVz1NcjAxX0LfgwutvEdJb/48IU4L 8obXPXfqTZLiBK13bICRmRvjiPIi22aGCVdEwu iWRv
200         OD6Ox9svtSgTJiixkZQ
201       </ds:SignatureValue>
```

Liberty Alliance Project:
Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification

Version: 1.2-errata-v2.0

```

202      <ds:KeyInfo>
203          <ds:X509Data>
204              <ds:X509Certificate>
205                  MIIIDMTCAs0ggAwIBAgIB3HDANBckqhkiG9w0BAQQFADCB1TE1MAKGA1UEBhMCVV
206                      MxCzAJBgNVBAcT
207                      A1NGMRkwFwYDVQQR3x3MaWJlcrR5IEFzbgLhbmnNLMRQwBgYDVQQLEwtJT1AgVG
208                      VzdGVyczE1MCAG
209                      A1UEAxM2TGliZXJ0eSBuZXN02XJzIEN1cnRpZml1cjkMCIGCSqGSiB3DQEJARYV
210                      cnJvZHJpZ3V1
211                      ekBuZw9zo2wuomVOM34XTDAyMTIwNDE1N1Tg0NFowgasx
212                      zAJeBgvNvBAYT
213                      AlVTMQswCQYDVQHwCTrjEkMCIGA1UEChMbTGliZXJ0eSBBbGxpYw5jZSB1cm
214                      ljc3NvbihMSYw
215                      JAYDVQQLEx1JT1AgVGvzdGVycyB1cm1jc3NvbihIHNpZ251cjEXMBU
216                      GA1UEAxMOZXJpY3Nzb24t
217                      YS5pb3AxKDAmBqkqkkiG9w0BQCQEWGXJyb2RyaWc1ZXpAZXJpY3Nzb24tYS5pb3AwqZ8wDQYJKoZI
218                      hvcNAQEBBQADqYAMIGJ
219                      A0GBAPUOGYvUxQc5jzDnJ14TV6TaTbB3fH95ju2420y6HQxm6qXdJSAo
220                      Wh7/AIes4JcV09DC2K2S6Vow2Yoxt2LIyH9HWH2zEUc1js/PueBHEWcW3tFezM6/h5GG5rCuVPza
221                      W9eoJ0bFPs2OPFKUawd:UXSDWUfY1KZ93IxhOB
222                      eZqq6VAqMBAAGjeTB3MEoGCWC GSAGG+EIPCC9
223                      FjtUaGzIHnpZ25pbmcgY2VydCB3YXMgY3J1YXR1ZCBmb3Ig dGVzdGluZy4gRG8gbm90IHRydXN0
224                      IG10LjATBqNVHRM
225                      EAjAAM3EGCWGSAGG+EIBAQ
226                      QBEAWIEMDALBqNVHQ8EBAMCBsAwDQYJKoZIhvCN
227                      AQEEBQADqYEAR/Hsg3pAprQwQVwDE9pc
228                      Caicukv4/W/+hrdpXLVKSr6TIlg4ouDCQJN
229                      os7tNuG9z
230                      AbfWHLHvCss51N2cfaZfns/DKqxRqcsaxL5ZUBksPpmsDoboopUv6Xm8RFsi7y
231                      9AgAVuqcbeY/+m
232                      70nOu030+FlMN3Ulk2E3rOKX1U1n
233                      oCC
234
235              </ds:X509Certificate>
236          </ds:X509Data>
237      </ds:KeyInfo>
238      </ds:Signature>
239      <samlp:AssertionArtifact>
240          AAMluxW6+f+jyA/4XuFHqPl7QDw/LIQL9+t7YQtG1Gw
241          k9ph0Adl+o+
242      </samlp:AssertionArtifact>
243      </samlp:Request>
244      </soap-env:Body>
245  </soap-env:Envelope>
```

230 The following is an example of a response, which supplies an assertion containing an authentication statement:

```

231
232 HTTP/1.1 200 OK
233 Content-Type: text/xml
234 Content-Length: nnnn
235 <soap-env:Envelope
236     xmlns:soap-env="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/scap/envelope/">
237     <soap-env:Header/>
238     <soap-env:Body>
239         <samlp:Response
240             xmlns:samlp="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
241             InResponseTo="RPCUk211+GVz+t11URp5loFvJXk"
242             IssueInstant="2002-10-31T21:42:13Z" MajorVersion="1" MinorVersion="1"
243             Recipient="http://localhost:8080/sp"
244             ResponseID="IANWF2L2xLybnc+BCwgY+p1/vIVAj">
245             <samlp:Status>
246                 <samlp:StatusCode
247                     xmlns:qns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
248                     Value="qns:Success">
249                 </samlp:StatusCode>
250             </samlp:Status>
251             <saml:Assertion
252                 xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:assertion"
253                 xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#"
254                 xmlns:lib="urn:liberty:idff:2003-08"
255                 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
256                 AssertionID="SqMC8Hs2vJ7z+t4UiLSmhKOSTU0U"
257                 InResponseTo="RPCUk211+GVz+t11URp5loFvJXk"
258                 IssueInstant="2002-10-31T21:42:13Z" Tssuer="http://localhost:8080/1cp"
259                 MajorVersion="1" MinorVersion="2"
260                 xsi:type="lib:AssertionType">
261                 <saml:Conditions
262                     NotBefore="2002-10-31T21:42:12Z"
263                     NotOnOrAfter="2002-10-31T21:42:43Z">
264                     <saml:AudienceRestrictionCondition>
265                         <saml:Audience>http://localhost:8080/sp</saml:Audience>
266                     </saml:AudienceRestrictionCondition>
267             </saml:Assertion>
268         </samlp:Response>
269     </soap-env:Body>
270 </soap-env:Envelope>
```

```

267      </saml:Conditions>
268      <saml:AuthenticationStatement
269          AuthenticationInstant="2002-10-31T21:42:13Z"
270          AuthenticationMethod="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:am:password"
271          xsi:type="lib:AuthenticationStatementType">
272          <saml:Subject xsi:type="lib:SubjectType">
273              <saml:NameIdentifier Format="urn:liloerty:iff:name id:federated">
274                  C9FFGouQdbJ7bpkismYgd8ygeVb3PlWK
275              </saml:NameIdentifier>
276              <saml:SubjectConfirmation>
277                  <saml:ConfirmationMethod>
278                      urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:cm:artifact
279                      </saml:ConfirmationMethod>
280                  </saml:SubjectConfirmation>
281                  <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>
282                      C9FFGouQdbJ7bpkismYgd8ygeVb3PlWK
283                  </lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>
284              </saml:Subject>
285          </saml:AuthenticationStatement>
286          <ds:Signature>
287              <ds:SignedInfo>
288                  <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
289                      Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
290                  </ds:CanonicalizationMethod>
291                  <ds:SignatureMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1">
292                  </ds:SignatureMethod>
293                  <ds:Reference URI="">
294                      <ds:Transforms>
295                          <ds:Transform
296                              Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#enveloped-signature">
297                          </ds:Transform>
298                          <ds:Transform Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
299                          </ds:Transform>
300                      </ds:Transforms>
301                      <ds:DigestMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1">
302                      </ds:DigestMethod>
303                      <ds:DigestValue>7bscbqHTX9H8bRftRTWlg4Fov1A=</ds:DigestValue>
304                  </ds:Reference>
305              </ds:SignedInfo>
306              <ds:SignatureValue>
307                  II-q3nC3jUaljlKUVkcC4iTFC1xe2QIRF0nvllqP35oZhtkBaDb 9qITA7gIkotaB584wXqTXwsfsu
308                  ErwEbuL3r8bRj7IF6NeCeiy3R0+z3newxyeZPz8wna449VNt0qNIIYkgNak9ViNCp0/kshMAtt0Po
309                  21LoFaKu3WG6d1GIDM=
310              </ds:SignatureValue>
311          </ds:Signature>
312      </saml:Assertion>
313  </samlp:Response>
314 </soap-env:Body>
315 </soap-env:Envelope>
```

316 2.1.2.7. Example of Message Exchange Using URL-encoding

```

317
318 http://127.0.0.1:8080/tfsidp/ICPSingleSignOnServiceV12?
319     RequestID=ddd4aa20-21d4-4366-8f60-7bbce068334a&MajorVersion=1
320     &MinorVersion=2&IssueInstant=2003-07-26T05%3A44%3A00Z
321     &ProviderID=http%3A%2F%2F127.0.0.1%3A8081%2Ftfsssp
322     &NameIDPolicy=none&IsPassive=0
323     &RelayState=3f53f0934e63726de06f355493683e131ad131ff
324     &SigAlg=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.w3.org%2F2000%2F09%2Fxmldsig%23rsa-sha1
325     &Signature=
326         kAfiiHlyI8OJG6IGV6Y17TcaxwF1E4wv%2FrONqAkkC11Kyxvjco3%2Bitx7Q44v
327         RVDm%2BbAm38offSsb%0AbzYsWqTMAiDPsm2wQ0uYF2oRB9AAqS%2BdzwfGWkqV%
328         2FU0malW7cRMDBA2ewyAQTDiALLsetQ6zAnJ%0A4KzHExQl%23zelPe%23sWOE%3D
329
```

330

Example 1. URL-encoded <AuthnRequest>

331

332 http://127.0.0.1:8081/tfsssp/SPAssertionConsumerServiceV1_2 ?
333 SAMLart=AAM2f3siji1R%23gQe%23MvfP6flshcGalPG1XrZG6E%2B212nHDCxPA7h%2BDcE%2B
334 &RelayState=3f53f0934%63728de06f555493683e131ad131ff
335

336

Example 2. URL-encoded <AuthnResponse>

337 3. Profiles

338 This section defines the Liberty profiles for the use of request and response messages defined in [LibertyProtSchema]
 339 and [SAMLCore11]. The combination of message content specification and message transport mechanisms for a
 340 single client type (that is, user agent) is termed a *Liberty profile*. The profiles have been grouped into categories
 341 according to the protocol message intent.

342 The following profile categories are defined in this document:

- 343 • **Single Sign-On and Federation:** The profiles by which a service provider obtains an authentication assertion
 344 from an identity provider facilitating single sign-on and identity federation.
- 345 • **Name Registration:** The profiles by which service providers and identity providers specify the name identifier to
 346 be used when communicating with each other about the Principal.
- 347 • **Federation Termination Notification:** The profiles by which service providers and identity providers are notified of
 348 federation termination.
- 349 • **Single Logout:** The profiles by which service providers and identity providers are notified of authenticated
 350 session termination.
- 351 • **Identity Provider Introduction:** The profile by which a service provider discovers which identity providers a
 352 Principal may be using.
- 353 • **Name Identifier Mapping:** The profile by which a service provider may obtain a NameIdentifier with which to
 354 refer to a Principal at a SAML Authority.
- 355 • **Name Identifier Encryption:** The profile by which one provider may encrypt a NameIdentifier to permit it to pass
 356 through a third-party without revealing the actual value until received by the intended provider.

357 3.1. Common Requirements

358 The following rules apply to all profiles in this specification, unless otherwise noted by the individual profile.

- 359 1. All HTTP requests and responses MUST be drawn from either HTTP 1.1 (see [RFC2616]) or HTTP 1.0 (see
 360 [RFC1945]). When an HTTP redirect is specified, the HTTP response MUST have a status code of "302".
 361 According to HTTP 1.1 and HTTP 1.0, the use of status code 302 is recommended to indicate "the requested
 362 resource resides temporarily under a different URI." The response may also include additional headers and an
 363 optional message.
- 364 2. When `https` is specified as the `<scheme>` for a URL, the HTTP connection MUST be made over either SSL 3.0
 365 (see [SSL]) or TLS 1.0 (see [RFC2246]) or any subsequent protocols that are backwards compatible with SSL 3.0
 366 and/or TLS 1.0. Other security protocols MAY be used as long as they implement equivalent security measures.
- 367 3. Messages between providers MUST have their integrity protected, confidentiality MUST be ensured and the
 368 recipient MUST authenticate the sender.
- 369 4. Providers MUST use secure transport (`https`) to achieve confidentiality and integrity protection. The initiator of
 370 the secure connection MUST authenticate the server using server-side X.509 certificates.

371 5. The authenticated identity of an identity provider MUST be securely available to a Principal before the Principal
372 presents his/her personal authentication data to that identity provider.

373 6. Certificates and private keys MUST be suitable for long-term signatures. See [LibertyProtSchema] for guidelines
374 on signature verification. For signing and verification of protocol messages, identity and service providers
375 SHOULD use certificates and private keys that are distinct from the certificates and private keys applied for
376 SSL or TLS channel protection.

377 7. In transactions between service providers and identity providers, requests MUST be protected against replay, and
378 received responses MUST be checked for correct correspondence with issued requests. (**Note:** Other steps may
379 intervene between the issuance of a request and its eventual response within a multistep transaction involving
380 redirections.) Additionally, time-based assurance of freshness MAY be provided.

381 8. Each service provider within a circle of trust MUST be configured to enable identification of the identity providers
382 whose authentications it will accept. Each identity provider MUST be configured to enable identification of the
383 service providers it intends to serve.
Note:
385 The format of this configuration is a local matter and could, for example, be represented as lists of names or as
386 sets of X.509 certificates of other circle of trust members.

387 9. Circle of trust bilateral agreements on selecting certificate authorities, obtaining X.509 credentials, establishing
388 and managing trusted public keys, and tracking lifecycles of corresponding credentials are assumed and not in
389 scope for this specification.

390 10. The <schema> of the URL for SOAP endpoints MUST be https.

391 11. All SOAP message exchanges MUST adhere to the SOAP protocol binding for Liberty (see Section 2.1).

392 3.1.1. User Agent

393 Unless otherwise noted in the specific profile, a user agent MUST support the following features to be interoperable
394 with the protocols in [LibertyProtSchema] and Liberty profiles in this document:

- 395 • HTTP 1.0 (see [RFC1945]) or HTTP 1.1 (see [RFC2616]).
- 396 • SSL 3.0 (see [SSL]) or TLS 1.0 (see [RFC2246]) or any subsequent protocols which are backwards compatible
397 with SSL 3.0 and/or TLS 1.0 either directly or via a proxy (for example, a WAP gateway).
- 398 • Minimum maximum URL length of 256 bytes. See [LibertyGlossary] for definition.
- 399 • A WAP browser user agent MUST support WML 1.0, 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 [WML] in addition to the above requirements.

400 Additionally, to support the optional identity provider introduction profile, either the user agent or a proxy must
 401 support session cookies (see [RFC2965]). The issue of using persistent cookies or session-length cookies is discussed
 402 in [LibertyImplGuide].

403 **3.1.2. Formatting and Encoding of Protocol Messages**

404 All protocol messages that are indicated by the profile as being communicated in the <query> component of the URL
 405 MUST adhere to the formatting and encoding rules in Section 3.1.2.1.

406 **3.1.2.1. Encoding URL-embedded Messages**

407 URL-embedded messages are encoded using the application/x-www-form-urlencoded MIME type as if they
 408 were generated from HTML forms with the GET method as defined in [HTML4].

409 The original XML protocol message MUST be encoded as follows:

- 410 • The <query> component parameter value MUST be the value of the XML protocol message element or attribute
 411 value.
- 412 • The value of the <query> component parameter MUST be a space-delimited list when the original message
 413 element has multiple values.
- 414 • Some of the referenced protocol message elements and attributes are optional. If an optional element or attribute
 415 does not appear in the original XML protocol message, then the corresponding data item MUST be omitted from
 416 the URL encoded message.
- 417 • URIs appearing in the URI-encoded message SHOULD NOT exceed 80 bytes in length (including %-escaping
 418 overhead). Likewise, the <lib:RelayState> data value SHOULD NOT exceed 80 bytes in length.
- 419 • The URL-encoding of status codes in the responses RegisterNameIdentifierResponse and
 420 LogoutResponse may be taken from several sources. The top level codes MUST be from SAML.
 421 Other codes (including Liberty-defined values) MAY be used at the second or lower levels. The URL parameter
 422 value should be interpreted as a QName with the "lib", "saml", and "samlp" namespaces pre-defined to their
 423 respective namespace URIs. Query parameters with the name "xmlns:prefix" can be used to map additional
 424 namespace prefixes for the purpose of QName resolution, so long as the xmlns:prefix URL parameter appears
 425 before the URI parameter containing the QName which needs the prefix definition.

426 As <samlp:StatusCode> elements may be nested hierarchically (see [[SAMLCore11]]), there may exist
 427 multiple values for <samlp:StatusCode> in the response messages. These multiple values MUST be encoded by
 428 producing a URL-encoded space-separated string as the value of this query parameter. An example is as follows:
 429

```
430     Value=samlp%3AResponder%20lib%3AFederationDoesNotExist
431
```

432 • Certain XML protocol messages support extensibility via an <Extension> element. Messages that are to be
 433 URI-encoded MUST adhere to the following restrictions when including extension content:

- 434 • Only attribute values and elements with simple content models are permitted.
- 435 • All attributes and elements MUST have an empty namespace and MUST have unique local names.
- 436 • Each value included SHOULD NOT exceed 80 bytes in length (including encoding overhead).

437 XML digital signatures are not directly URL-encoded due to space concerns. If the Liberty XML protocol message is
 438 signed with an XML signature, the encoded URL form of the message MUST be signed as follows:

439 • Include the signature algorithm identifier as a new <query> component parameter named SigAlg, but omit the
440 signature.

441 • Sign the string containing the URL-encoded message. The string to be signed MUST include only the <query>
442 part of the URL (that is, everything after ? and before &Signature=). Any required URL-escaping MUST be
443 done before signing.

444 • Encode the signature using base64 (see [RFC2045]).

445 • Add the base64-encoded signature to the encoded message as a new data item named Signature.

446 Note that some characters in the base64-encoded signature value may require URL escaping before insertion into the
447 URL <query> part, as is the case for any other data item value.

448 Any items added after the Signature <query> component parameter are implicitly unsigned.

449 The service URL provided by the provider (the URL to which <query> parameters are added) MUST NOT contain
450 any pre-existing <query> parameter values.

451 The following signature algorithms (i.e., DSAwithSHA1, RSAwithSHA1) and their identifiers (the URIs) MUST be
452 supported:

453 • DSAwithSHA1 - http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#dsa-sha1

454 • RSAwithSHA1 - http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1

455 3.1.2.1.1. Size Limitations

456 When the request initiator knows or suspects that the user agent cannot process the full URL-encoded message in the
457 URL due to size considerations, the requestor MAY send the Liberty XML protocol message using a form POST.
458 The form MUST be constructed with contents that contain the field LAREQ or LARES with the respective value being
459 the Liberty XML protocol request or response message (e.g., <lib:AuthnRequest> or <lib:AuthnResponse>)
460 as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The Liberty XML protocol message MUST be encoded by applying a base64
461 transformation (refer to [RFC2045]) to the XML message and all its elements.

462 3.1.2.1.2. URL-encoded <lib:AuthnRequest>

463 The original <lib:AuthnRequest> message:

```
464
465         <lib:AuthnRequest RequestID="[RequestID]"
466             MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
467             MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
468             IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
469             ccnsent="[consent]">
470             <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
471             <lib:AffiliationID>[AffiliationID]</lib:AffiliationID>
472             <lib:ForceAuthn>[ForceAuthn]</lib:ForceAuthn>
473             <lib:IsPassive>[IsPassive]</lib:IsPassive>
474             <lib:NameIDPolicy>[NameIDPolicy]</lib:NameIDPolicy>
475             <lib:ProtocolProfile>[ProtocolProfile]</lib:ProtocolProfile>
476             <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceID>[AssertionConsumerServiceID]
477             </lib:AssertionConsumerServiceID>
478             <lib:AuthrContext>
479                 <lib:AuthnContextStatementRef>[AuthnContextStatementRef]
480                 </lib:AuthnContextStatementRef>
481             </lib:AuthrContext>
482             <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
483             <lib:AuthrContextComparison>[AuthnContextComparison]</lib:AuthnContextComparison>
```

```

484         <lib:Scoping>
485             <lib:ProxyCount>[ProxyCount] </lib:ProxyCount>
486             <lib:IDPList>
487                 <lib:IDPEntries>[IDPEntries]</lib:IDPEntries>
488                     <lib:GetComplete>[GetComplete]</lib:GetComplete>
489                 </lib:IDPList>
490             </lib:Scoping>
491         </lib:AuthnRequest>
```

492 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
493 present in the original message:

495 RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant, ProviderID, AffiliationID, ForceAuthn,
496 IsPassive, NameIDPolicy, ProtocolProfile, AuthnContextStatementRef, AuthnContextClassRef,
497 AuthnContextComparison, RelayState, ProxyCount, IDPEntries, GetComplete, consent.

498 • The <IDPEntries> element may contain multiple <IDPEntry> elements, each of which may contain multiple
499 pieces of data (<ProviderID>, <ProviderName> and <Loc>). The <IDPEntries> element MUST be
500 URL-encoded by taking only the <ProviderID> element from each individual <IDPEntry> element, and
501 concatenating them in a space-separated string, as in the following example:

502 ... &IDPEntries=http%3A%2F%2Fidp1.com%2Fliberty%2Fhttp%3A%2F%2Fidp2.com%2Fliberty%2F ...
503

504 The recipient of such a URL-encoded list of <ProviderID> elements may obtain the remainder of the information
505 present in the original <IDPEntry> by accessing metadata for the individual providers referenced in the URL-
506 encoded list.

507 • Example of <lib:AuthnRequest> message URL-encoded and signed:

```

509 http://idp.example.com/authn?RequestID=RMvY34pg%2FV9agJ5yw0HL0AejcqQF
510 &MajorVersion=1&MinorVersion=2&IssueInstant=2002-05 15T00%3A58%3A19
511 &consent=urn%3Aliberty%3Aconsent%3Abtained&ProviderID=http%3A%2F%2Fsp.example.com%2Fliberty%2F
512 &ForceAuthn=true&IsPassive=false&NameIDPolicy=federated
513 &ProtocolProfile=http%3A%2F%2Fproject.liberty.org%2Fprofiles%2Fbrws-post
514 http%3A%2F%2Fwww.projectliberty.org%2Fschemas%2Fauthctx%2Fclasses%2FPasswrdProtectedTransport
515 &RelayState=03mhakSms5tMQ0WRDCEzp7BNcywZa75FwIcsSE PvbkofxaQHCuNnc5yChId
516 D1Kc7JBv9Xbw3avRBK7VFp12X
517 &SigAlg=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.w3.org%2F2000%2F09%2Fxmlsig%23rsa-sha1
518 &Signature=EoD8bNr2jEQe%2Fumon6oU%2FZGII7gbJAe4MLUUMrD%2B%78Yf3gfdzG2qJdNAJkzVHGf08W8Dzpq
519 %0D%0AsETTd5VP9MLPcvxbF'QoF'0CJJmvL26cPsuc54q7oJrcEjJ%2F2CkDc4DA1YlZ5kPiq%2BtrykqLz0U%2BS%0D%
520 0ANqcNHkjh6W3YkGv7RBs%3D
521
```

522 3.1.2.1.3. URL-Encoded <lib:FederationTerminationNotification>

523 The original <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> message:

```

524 <lib:FederationTerminationNotification ...
525     RequestID="[RequestID]"
526     MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
527     MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
528     IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
529     consent="[consent]"
530     <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
531     <saml:NameIdentifier
532         NameQualifier="[NameQualifier]"
533         Format="NameFormat">[NameIdentifier |</saml:NameIdentifier>
534     </lib:FederationTerminationNotification>
535 
```

537 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
 538 present in the original message:
 539
 540 RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant, ProviderID, NameQualifier, NameFormat,
 541 NameIdentifier, consent.

542 3.1.2.1.4. URL-Encoded <lib:LogoutRequest>

543 The original <lib:LogoutRequest> message:

```
544 <lib:LogoutRequest ...  

545   RequestID="[RequestID]"  

546   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"  

547   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"  

548   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"  

549   consent="[consent]">  

550     <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>  

551     <saml:NameIdentifier  

552       NameQualifier="[NameQualifier]"  

553       Format="[NameFormat]">  

554         [NameIdentifier]  

555       </saml:NameIdentifier>  

556     <lib:SessionIndex>[SessionIndex]</lib:SessionIndex>  

557     <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>  

558   </lib:LogoutRequest>
```

560 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
 561 present in the original message:
 562
 563 RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant,
 564 ProviderID, NameQualifier, NameFormat, NameIdentifier,
 565 SessionIndex, RelayState, consent.

566 3.1.2.1.5. URL-Encoded <lib:LogoutResponse>

567 The <lib:LogoutResponse> response message:

```
568 <lib:LogoutResponse  

569   ResponseID="[ResponseID]"  

570   InResponseTo="[InResponseTo]"  

571   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"  

572   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"  

573   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"  

574   Recipient="[Recipient]">  

575   <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>  

576   <sam:p>Status>  

577   <sam:p>StatusValue>[Value]</sam:p>Status>  

578   <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>  

579 </lib:LogoutResponse>
```

582 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
 583 present in the original message:
 584
 585 ResponseID, InResponseTo, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant, Recipient, ProviderID, Value, RelayState.

587 • The <lib:LogoutResponse> message may contain nested status code information. Multiple values MUST be
588 URL-encoded by creating a space-separated list (see general requirements at top of Section 3.1.2.1.5).

589 3.1.2.1.6. URL-Encoded <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>

590 The original <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> message:

```
591
592 <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest
593   RequestID="[RequestID]"
594   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
595   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
596   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
597   <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
598   <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier
599     NameQualifier="[IDPNameQualifier]"
600     Format="[IDPNameFormat]">[IDPProvidedNameIdentifier]
601   </lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>
602   <lib:SPPProvidedNameIdentifier
603     NameQualifier="[SPNameQualifier]"
604     Format="[SPNameFormat]">[SPPProvidedNameIdentifier]
605   </lib:SPPProvidedNameIdentifier>
606   <lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier
607     NameQualifier="[OldNameQualifier]"
608     Format="[OldNameFormat]">[OldProvidedNameIdentifier]
609   </lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier>
610   <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
611 </lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>
612
```

613 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
614 present in the original message:

```
615
616   RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant,
617   ProviderID, IDPNameQualifier, IDPNameFormat, IDPProvidedNameIdentifier,
618   SPNameQualifier, SPNameFormat, SPPProvidedNameIdentifier,
619   OldNameQualifier, OldNameFormat, OldProvidedNameIdentifier,
620   RelayState
```

621 3.1.2.1.7. URL-Encoded <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>

622 The <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse> response message:

```
623
624 <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse
625   ResponseID="[ResponseID]"
626   InResponseTo="[InResponseTo]"
627   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
628   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
629   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
630   Recipient="[Recipient]"
631   <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
632   <samlp:Status>
633   <samlp:StatusCode Value="[Value]" />
634   </samlp:Status>
635   <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
636 </lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>
637
```

638 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
 639 present in the original message:
 640
 641 ResponseID, InResponseTo, MajorVersion, MinorVersion,
 642 IssueInstant, Recipient, ProviderID, Value, RelayState
 643

644 • The <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse> message may contain nested status code information. Multiple
 645 values MUST be URL-encoded by creating a space-separated list (see general requirements at top of
 646 Section 3.1.2.1.

647 **3.1.3. Provider Metadata**

648 The majority of the Liberty profiles defined in this document rely on metadata that specify the policies that govern
 649 the behavior of the service provider or identity provider. These provider metadata may be shared out of band between
 650 an identity provider and a service provider prior to the exchange of Liberty protocol messages or with the protocols
 651 described in [LibertyMetadata]. The provider metadata relevant to each profile are listed in this document at the
 652 beginning of the profile category. Refer to [LibertyMetadata] for a complete enumeration of the Liberty provider
 653 metadata elements and their associated schema.

654 **3.2. Single Sign-On and Federation Profiles**

655 This section defines the profiles by which a service provider obtains an authentication assertion of a user agent from
 656 an identity provider to facilitate single sign-on. Additionally, the single sign-on profiles can be used as a means of
 657 federating an identity from a service provider to an identity provider through the use of the <NameIDPolicy> element
 658 in the <lib:AuthnRequest> protocol message as specified in [LibertyProtSchema].

659 The single sign-on profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]:

660 • **ProviderID** Used to uniquely identify the service provider to the identity provider and is documented in these
 661 profiles as "service provider ID."

662 • **AffiliationID** Used to uniquely identify an affiliation group to the identity provider and is documented in
 663 these profiles as "affiliation ID."

664 • **SingleSignOnServiceURL** The URL at the identity provider that the service provider should use when sending
 665 single sign-on and federation requests. It is documented in these profiles as "single sign-on service URL."

666 • **AssertionConsumerServiceURL** The URL(s) at the service provider that an identity provider should use when
 667 sending single sign-on or federation responses. It is documented in these profiles as "assertion consumer service
 668 URL."

669 • **SOAPEndpoint** The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty SOAP
 670 messages are sent.

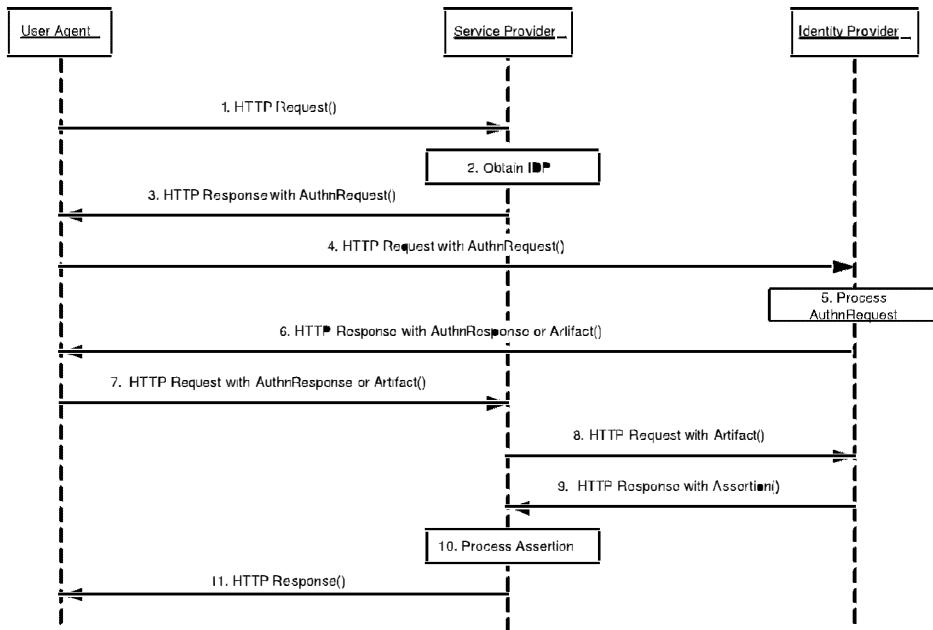
671 3.2.1. Common Interactions and Processing Rules

672 This section defines the set of interactions and process rules that are common to all single sign-on profiles.

673 All single sign-on profiles can be described by one interaction diagram, provided that different messages are optional in different profiles and that the actual content of the messages may differ slightly. Where interactions and messages differ or are optional, they are designated and detailed within the specific single sign-on profiles. Figure 1 represents the basic template of interactions for achieving single sign-on. This should be used as the baseline for all single sign-on profiles.

678 In the figure below, steps 1 through 5 can be considered typical but optional. An identity provider MAY initiate a SSO profile by unilaterally creating a <lib:AuthnResponse> or artifact, and proceeding with step 6, as discussed in [LibertyProtSchema].

681 It should be noted that multiple identity providers may be involved in the authentication of the Principal. Although 682 a single identity provider is depicted in the profiles below (Figure 1, that identity provider MAY interact with other 683 identity providers to authenticate the Principal using the proxying method described in [LibertyProtSchema] and the 684 profiles as noted below. In such situations these profiles would be used by the identity provider originally contacted 685 by the requesting service provider to communicate with additional identity providers.



686

687 **Figure 1. Basic single sign-on profile.**

688 3.2.1.1. Step 1: HTTP Request

689 In step 1, the user agent accesses the intersite transfer service at the service provider with information about the desired 690 target attached to the URL. Typically, access to the intersite transfer service occurs via a redirection by the service 691 provider in response to a user agent request for a restricted resource.

692 It is RECOMMENDED that the HTTP request be made over either SSL 3.0 (see [SSL]) or TLS 1.0 (see [RFC2246]) 693 to maintain confidentiality and message integrity in step 1.

694 3.2.1.2. Step 2: Obtain Identity Provider

695 In step 2, the service provider obtains the address of the appropriate identity provider to redirect the user agent to
 696 in step 3. The means by which the identity provider address is obtained is implementation-dependent and up to the
 697 service provider. The service provider MAY use the Liberty identity provider introduction profile in this step.

698 **3.2.1.3. Step 3: HTTP Response with <AuthnRequest>**

699 In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service responds and sends the user agent to the single sign-on service
 700 URL at the identity provider. The form and contents of the HTTP response in this step are profile-dependent.

701 **3.2.1.4. Step 4: HTTP Request with <AuthnRequest>**

702 In step 4, the user agent accesses the identity provider's single sign-on service URL with the <lib:AuthnRequest>
 703 information. This request may be a GET or POST request; providers MUST support both methods. As described later,
 704 such a POST MUST contain an LAREQ form element containing the XML protocol request in base64-encoded format.

705 **3.2.1.5. Step 5: Processing <AuthnRequest>**

706 In step 5, the identity provider MUST process the <lib:AuthnRequest> message according to the rules specified in
 707 [LibertyProtSchema].

708 If the Principal has not yet been authenticated with the identity provider, authentication at the identity provider MAY
 709 occur in this step. The identity provider MAY obtain consent from the Principal for federation, or otherwise consult
 710 the Principal. To this end the identity provider MAY return to the HTTP request any HTTP response, including but
 711 not limited to HTTP Authentication, HTTP redirect, or content. The identity provider SHOULD respect the HTTP
 712 User-Agent and Accept headers and SHOULD avoid responding with content-types that the User-Agent may not be
 713 able to accept. Authentication of the Principal by the identity provider is dependent upon the <lib:AuthnRequest>
 714 message content.

715 In case the identity provider responds to the user agent with a form, it is RECOMMENDED that the <input>
 716 parameters of the form be named according to [RFC3106] whenever possible.

717 **3.2.1.6. Step 6: HTTP Response with <AuthnResponse> or Artifact**

718 In step 6, the identity provider MUST respond to the user agent with a <lib:AuthnResponse>, a SAML artifact, or
 719 an error. The form and contents of the HTTP response in this step are profile-dependent.

720 **3.2.1.7. Step 7: HTTP Request with <AuthnResponse> or Artifact**

721 In step 7, the user agent accesses the assertion consumer service URL at the service provider with a
 722 <lib:AuthnResponse> or a SAML artifact. This request may be a GET or POST request; providers MUST
 723 support both methods. As described later, such a POST MUST contain an LARES form element containing the XML
 724 protocol request or artifact in base64-encoded format.

725 **3.2.1.8. Step 8: HTTP Request with Artifact**

726 Step 8 is required only for single sign-on profiles that use a SAML artifact.

727 In this step the service provider, in effect, dereferences the single SAML artifact in its possession to acquire the
 728 authentication assertion that corresponds to the artifact.

729 The service provider MUST send a <samlp:Request> SOAP message to the identity provider's SOAP endpoint,
 730 requesting the assertion by supplying the SAML assertion artifact in the <samlp:AssertionArtifact> element as
 731 specified in [SAMLBind1].

732 The service provider MUST provide a mechanism for the identity provider to authenticate the service provider.

733 **3.2.1.9. Step 9: HTTP Response with Assertion**

734 Step 9 is required only for single sign-on profiles that use a SAML artifact.

735 In this step if the identity provider is able to find or construct the requested assertion, it responds with a
736 <samlp:Response> SOAP message with the requested <saml:Assertion>. Otherwise, it returns an appropriate
737 status code, as defined within the “SOAP binding for SAML” (see [SAMLBind11]) and the [LibertyProtSchema].

738 3.2.1.10. Step 10: Process Assertion

739 In step 10, the service provider processes the <saml:Assertion> returned in the <samlp:Response> or
740 <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol message to determine its validity and how to respond to the Principal’s original
741 request. The signature on the <saml:Assertion> must be verified.

742 The service provider processing of the assertion MUST adhere to the rules defined in [SAMLCore11] for things such
743 as assertion <saml:Conditions> and <saml:Advice>.

744 The service provider MAY obtain authentication context information for the Principal’s current session
745 from the <lib:AuthnContext> element contained in <saml:Advice>. Similarly, the information in the
746 <lib:RelayState> element MAY be obtained and used in further processing by the service provider.

747 3.2.1.11. Step 11: HTTP Response

748 In step 11, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that either allows or denies access to the originally requested
749 resource.

750 3.2.2. Liberty Artifact Profile

751 The Liberty artifact profile relies on a reference to the needed assertion traveling in a SAML artifact, which the service
752 provider must dereference from the identity provider to determine whether the Principal is authenticated. This profile
753 is an adaptation of the “Browser/artifact profile” for SAML as documented in [SAMLBind11]. See Figure 3.

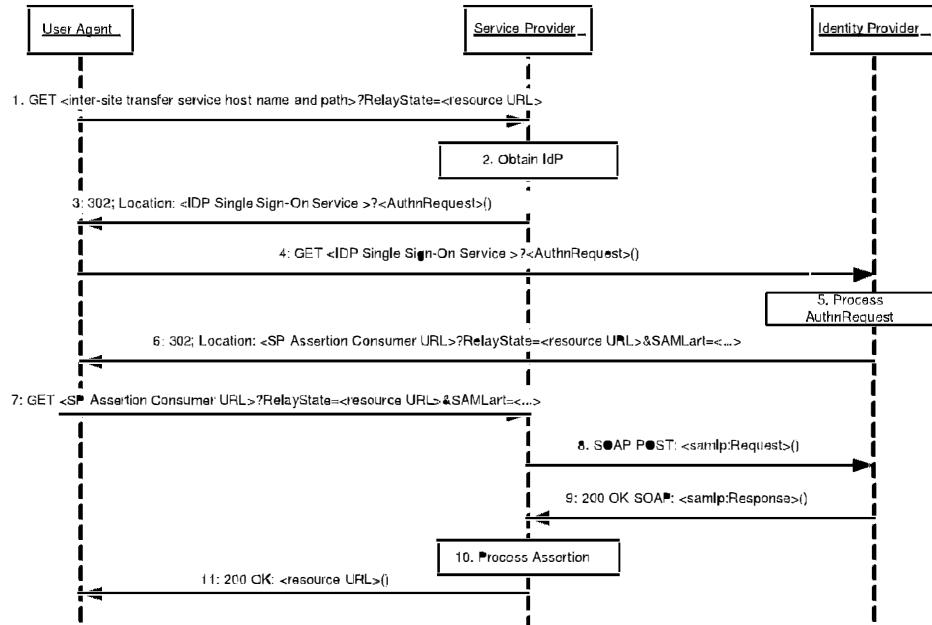
754 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile (for example,
755 <lib:ProtocolProfile> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message):

756 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/brows-art>

757 The Liberty artifact profile consists of a single interaction among three parties: a user agent, an identity provider, and
758 a service provider, with a nested subinteraction between the identity provider and the service provider.

759 3.2.2.1. Interactions

760 Figure 2 illustrates the Liberty artifact profile for single sign-on.



761

Figure 2. Liberty artifact profile for single sign-on

763 This profile description assumes that the user agent has already authenticated at the identity provider prior to step 1.
 764 Thus, a valid session exists for the user agent at the identity provider. When implementing this profile, all processing
 765 rules defined in Section 3.2.1 for the single sign-on profiles MUST be followed. Additionally, the following rules
 766 MUST be observed as they relate to steps 3, 6 and 7:

767 3.2.2.1.1. Step 3: Single sign on Service with <AuthnRequest>

768 In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service responds and instructs the user agent to access the single
 769 sign-on service URL at the identity provider.

770 This step may take place via an HTTP 302 redirect, a WML redirect deck or any other method that results in the user
 771 agent being instructed to make an HTTP GET or POST request to the identity provider's single signon service.

772 This response MUST adhere to the following rules:

773 • The response MUST contain the identity provider's single sign-on service URL (for example, as the Location header of an HTTP 302 redirect, the action attribute of an HTML form or the href attribute of a <go> element in a WML redirect deck).

776 • The identity provider's single sign-on service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme.

777 **Note:**

778 Future protocols may be adopted and enabled to work within this framework. Therefore, implementers are
 779 encouraged to not hardcode a reliance on https.

780 • The response MUST include one of the following:

781 • A <query> component containing the <lib:AuthnRequest> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.

783 **Note:**

784 The <lib:RelayState> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message can be used by the ser-
785 vice provider to help maintain state information during the single sign-on and federation process. For
786 example, the originally requested resource (i.e., RelayState in step 1) could be stored as the value
787 for the <lib:RelayState> element, which would then be returned to the service provider in the
788 <lib:AuthnResponse> in step 7. The service provider could then use this information to formulate the
789 HTTP response to the user agent in step 11.

790 • An HTTP form containing the field LAREQ with the value of the <lib:AuthnRequest> protocol message
791 as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnRequest> MUST be encoded by applying a base64
792 transformation (see [RFC2045]).

793 Implementation examples:

794 • HTTP 302 Redirect

795
796
797 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
798 <other headers>
799 Location: https://<Identity Provider Single Sign-On Service host name and path>?<query>
800 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
801
802

803 • HTML Form POST

804
805
806 <html>
807 <body onLoad="document.forms[0].submit()">
808 <form action="https://<Identity Provider Single Sign-On Service host name and path>" method="POST">
809 <input type="hidden" name="LAREQ" value="" />
810 </form>
811 </body>
812 </html>
813
814
815

816 • WML Redirect with POST

817
818 ...
819 <wml>
820 <card id="redirect" title="Log In">
821 <onenterforward>
822 <go method="post" href="<Identity Provider Single Sign-On service host name and path>">
823 <postfield name="LAREQ" Value="<base64-encoded AuthnRequest>" />
824 </go>
825 </onenterforward>
826 <onenterbackward>
827 <prev/>
828 </onenterbackward>
829 <p>
830 Contacting IdP. Please wait...
831 </p>
832 ...
833 </card>
834 ...
835 </wml>
836
837

```

838 • WML Redirect with GET
839
840 ...
841 <wml>
842 <card id="redirect" title="Log In">
843   <onenterforward>
844     <go href="<Identity Provider Single Sign-On service host name and path>?<query>" />
845   </onenterforward>
846   <onenterbackward>
847     <rev/>
848   </onenterbackward>
849   <p>
850     Contacting IdP. Please wait...
851   </p>
852 ...
853 </card>
854 ...
855 </wml>
856
857

```

858 where:

859 <Identity Provider Single Sign-On service host name and path>

860 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the single sign-on service URL at the
861 identity provider.

862 <query>= ...<URL-encoded AuthnRequest> ...

863 A <query> component MUST contain a single authentication request:

864 <base64-encoded AuthnRequest>

865 A <base64-encoded AuthnRequest> component MUST contain a single authentication request message in
866 base64-encoded form.

867 3.2.2.1.2. Step 6: Redirecting to the Service Provider

868 In step 6, the identity provider instructs the user agent to access the service provider's assertion consumer service
869 URL, and provides a SAML artifact for de-referencing by the service provider.

870 This step may take place via an IITTP 302 redirect, a WML redirect deck or any other method that results in the user
871 agent being instructed to make an IITTP GET or POST request to the service provider's assertion consumer service.

872 This response MUST adhere to the following rules:

873 • The response MUST contain the service provider's assertion consumer service URL (for example, as the Location
874 header of an HTTP 302 redirect, the action attribute of an HTMLform or the href attribute of a <go> element
875 in a WML redirect deck).

876 • The service provider's assertion consumer service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme.

877 **Note:**

878 Future protocols may be adopted and enabled to work within this framework. Therefore, implementers are
879 encouraged to not hardcode a reliance on https.

880 • The response MUST include one of the following:

881 • A <query> component containing a parameter SAMLart, the value of which is the SAML artifact on success
 882 or on failure. In the case of failure, the status will be conveyed in the <saml:Response> returned in Step 9.
 883 Additionally, if the <lib:AuthnRequest> processed in Step 5 included a value for the <lib:RelayState>
 884 element, then a parameter named RelayState with a value set to that of the <lib:RelayState> element MUST
 885 be included in the <query> component.

886 • An HTTP form containing the field LARES with the value of the SAML Artifact as defined in Section 3.2.2.2
 887 If a value for <RelayState> was supplied in the <lib:AuthnRequest>, then the form MUST contain a
 888 field RelayState, with a value obtained from that element in the <lib:AuthnRequest>.

889 • All SAML artifacts returned MUST contain the same identity provider ID.

890 Implementation examples:

891 • HTTP 302 Redirect

```
892
893
894 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
895 <other headers>
896 Location: https://<Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>?<query>
897 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
898
899
```

900 • HTML Form POST

```
901
902
903 <html>
904   <body onLoad="document.forms[0].submit()">
905     <form action="https://<Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>" method="POST">
906       <input type="hidden" name="LAREQ" value="<SAML Artifact>" >
907       <input type="hidden" name="RelayState" value="<RelayState>" >
908     </form>
909   </body>
910 </html>
911
912
913
```

914 • WML Redirect with POST

```
915
916 ...
917 <wml>
918 <card id="redirect" title="Artifact">
919   <onenterforward>
920     <go method="post" href="<Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>" >
921       <postfield name="LAREQ" Value="<SAML Artifact>" />
922       <postfield name="RelayState" Value="<RelayState>" />
923     </go>
924   </onenterforward>
925   <onenterbackward>
926     <prev/>
927   </onenterbackward>
928   <p>
929     Contacting IdP. Please wait...
930   </p>
931 ...
932 </card>
933 ...
934 </wml>
935
936
```

```

937   • WML Redirect with GET
938
939   ...
940   <wml>
941     <card id="redirect" title="Artifact">
942       <onenterforward>
943         <go href="?<query>" />
944       </onenterforward>
945       <onenterbackward>
946         <rev/>
947       </onenterbackward>
948       <p>
949         Contacting IdP. Please wait...
950       </p>
951     ...
952   </card>
953   ...
954 </wml>
955
956

```

957 where:

958 <Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>

959 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the assertion consumer service URL at the
960 service provider.

961 <query>= ...SAMLArtifact=<SAML Artifact> ...RelayState=<resource URI>

962 A <query> component MUST contain at least one SAML Artifact. A single RelayState MUST be included if a value
963 for the <RelayState> was provided in the <lib:AuthnRequest>. All SAML Artifacts included MUST contain the
964 same identity provider ID (see Section 3.2.2.2).

965 <SAML Artifact>

966 A <SAML Artifact> component MUST contain at least one SAML Artifact.

967 <RelayState>

968 A form field named RelayState, with the value of that element from the <lib:AuthnRequest> MUST be included
969 if a value for the <RelayState> was provided in the <lib:AuthnRequest> and the HTTP request is made using a
970 POST.

971 3.2.2.1.3. Step 7: Accessing the Assertion Consumer Service

972 In step 7, the user agent accesses the assertion consumer service URL at the service provider, with a SAML artifact
973 representing the Principal's authentication information attached to the URL.

974 3.2.2.2. Artifact Format

975 The artifact format includes a mandatory two-byte artifact type code, as follows:

```

976
977
978 SAML_artifact := Base64(TypeCode RemainingArtifact)
979 TypeCode      := Byte1Byte2
980
981

```

982 The notation Base64(TypeCode RemainingArtifact) represents the application of the base64 transformation to the
983 catenation of the TypeCode and RemainingArtifact. This profile defines an artifact type of type code 0x0003,

984 which is REQUIRED (mandatory to implement) for any implementation of the Liberty browser artifact profile. This
985 artifact type is defined as follows:

```
986
987
988 TypeCode      := 0x0003
989 RemainingArtifact := IdentityProviderSuccinctID AssertionHandle
990 IdentityProviderSuccinctID:= 20-byte_sequence
991 AssertionHandle   := 20-byte_sequence
992
993
```

994 `IdentityProviderSuccinctID` is a 20-byte sequence used by the service provider to determine identity provider
995 identity and location. It is assumed that the service provider will maintain a table of `IdentityProviderSuccinctID`
996 values as well as the URL (or address) for the corresponding SAML responder at the identity provider. This
997 information is communicated between the identity provider and service provider out of band. On receiving the SAML
998 artifact, the service provider determines whether the `IdentityProviderSuccinctID` belongs to a known identity
999 provider and, if so, obtains the location before sending a SAML request.

1000 Any two identity providers with a common service provider MUST use distinct `IdentityProviderSuccinctID`
1001 values. Construction of `AssertionHandle` values is governed by the principles that the values SHOULD have no
1002 predictable relationship to the contents of the referenced assertion at the identity provider, and that constructing or
1003 guessing the value of a valid, outstanding assertion handle MUST be infeasible.

1004 The following rules MUST be followed for the creation of SAML artifacts at identity providers:

- 1005 • Each identity provider selects a single identification URL, corresponding to the provider metadata element
1006 `ProviderID` specified in [LibertyMetadata].
- 1007 • The identity provider constructs the `IdentityProviderSuccinctID` component of the artifact by taking the
1008 SHA-1 hash of the identification URL as a 20-byte binary value. Note that the `IdentityProviderSuccinctID`
1009 value, used to construct the artifact, is not encoded in hexadecimal. The `AssertionHandle` value is constructed
1010 from a cryptographically strong random or pseudo-random number sequence (see [RFC1750]) generated by the
1011 identity provider. The sequence consists of a value of at least eight bytes. The value should be padded to a total
1012 length of 20 bytes.

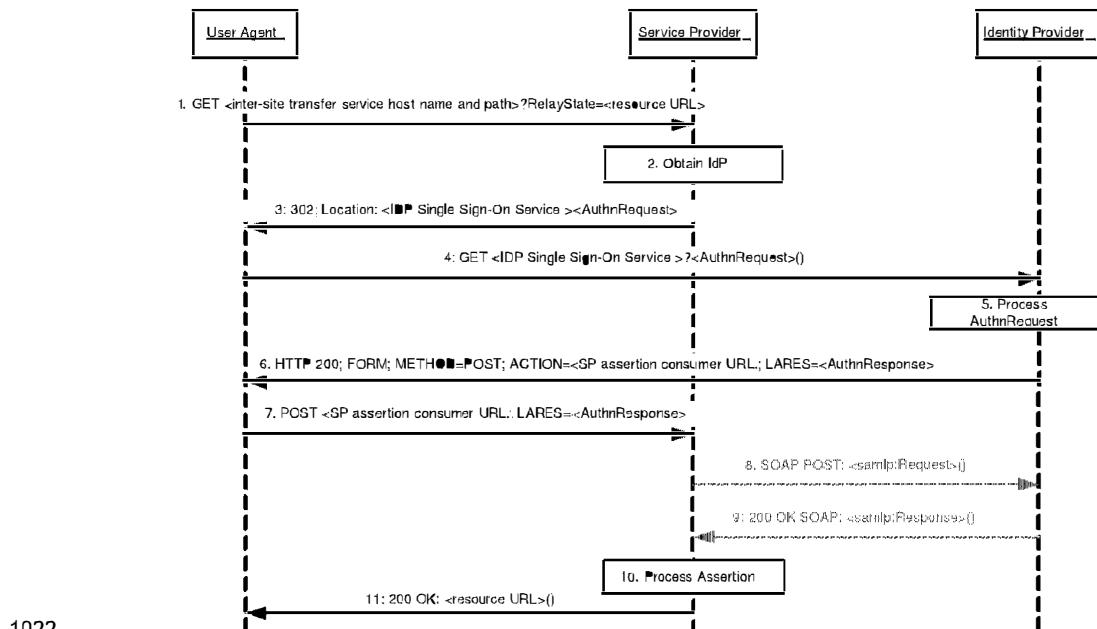
1013 3.2.3. Liberty Browser POST Profile

1014 The Liberty browser POST profile allows authentication information to be supplied to an identity provider without the
1015 use of an artifact. Figure 3 diagrams the interactions between parties in the Liberty POST profile. This profile is an
1016 adaptation of the "Browser/post profile" for SAML as documented in [SAMLBind11].

1017 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile (for example,
1018 `<lib:ProtocolProfile>` element of the `<lib:AuthnRequest>` message):

1019 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/brows-post>

1020 The Liberty POST profile consists of a series of two interactions, the first between a user agent and an identity provider,
1021 and the second directly between the user agent and the service provider.



1022

1023

Figure 3. Liberty browser POST profile for single sign-on

1024 This profile description assumes that the user agent has already authenticated at the identity provider prior to step 1.
 1025 Thus, a valid session exists for the user agent at the identity provider.

1026 When implementing this profile, all processing rules defined in Section 3.2.1 for single sign-on profiles MUST be
 1027 followed with the exception that steps 8 and 9 MUST be omitted. Additionally, the following rules MUST be observed
 1028 as they relate to steps 3, 6 and 7:

1029 **3.2.3.1. Step 3: Single Sign-On Service with `<AuthnRequest>`**

1030 In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service responds and sends the user agent to the single sign-on service
 1031 URL at the identity provider.

1032 This step may take place via an HTTP 302 redirect, a WML redirect deck or any other method that results in the user
 1033 agent being instructed to make an HTTP GET or POST request to the identity provider's single sign-on service.

1034 This response MUST adhere to the following rules:

1035 • The response MUST contain the identity provider's single sign-on service URL (for example, as the Location
 1036 header of an HTTP 302 redirect, the `action` attribute of an HTML `form` or the `href` attribute of a `<go>` element
 1037 in a WML redirect deck).

1038 • The identity provider's single sign-on service URL MUST specify `https` as the URL scheme.

1039 **Note:**

1040 Future protocols may be adopted and enabled to work within this framework. Therefore, implementers are
 1041 encouraged to not hardcode a reliance on `https`.

1042 • The response MUST include one of the following:

1043 • A <query> component containing the <lib:AuthnRequest> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2

1045 **Note:**

1046 The <lib:RelayState> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message can be used by the ser-
1047 vice provider to help maintain state information during the single sign-on and federation process. For
1048 example, the originally requested resource (that is, RelayState in step 1) could be stored as the value
1049 for the <lib:RelayState> element, which would then be returned to the service provider in the
1050 <lib:AuthnResponse> in step 7. The service provider could then use this information to formulate the
1051 HTTP response to the user agent in step 11.

1052 • An HTTP form containing the field LARES with the value of the <lib:AuthnRequest> protocol message
1053 as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnRequest> MUST be encoded by applying a base64
1054 transformation (see [RFC2045]).

1055 See the discussion of this step in the artifact profile for implementation examples.

1056 **3.2.3.2. Step 6: Generating and Supplying the <AuthnResponse>**

1057 In step 6 the identity provider generates an HTML form containing an authentication assertion that MUST be sent in
1058 an HTTP 200 response to the user agent.

1059 The form MUST be constructed such that it requests a POST to the service provider's assertion consumer URL
1060 with form contents that contain the field LARES with the value being the <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol
1061 message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnResponse> MUST be encoded by applying a base64
1062 transformation (refer to [RFC2045]) to the <lib:AuthnResponse> and all of its elements. The service provider's
1063 assertion consumer service URL used as the target of the form POST MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if
1064 another scheme is specified, it MUST be treated as an error by the identity provider.

1065 Multiple <saml:Assertion> elements MAY be included in the response. The identity provider MUST digitally sign
1066 each of the assertions included in the response.

1067 The <saml:ConfirmationMethod> element of the assertion MUST be set to the value specified in [SAMLCore11]
1068 for "Assertion Bearer."

1069 **3.2.3.3. Step 7: Posting the Form Containing the <AuthnResponse>**

1070 In step 7 the user agent issues the HTTP POST request containing the <lib:AuthnResponse> to the service provider.

1071 **3.2.4. Liberty-Enabled Client and Proxy Profile**

1072 The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile specifies interactions between Liberty-enabled clients and/or proxies,
1073 service providers, and identity providers. See Figure 5. A Liberty-enabled client is a client that has, or knows how to
1074 obtain, knowledge about the identity provider that the Principal wishes to use with the service provider. In addition a
1075 Liberty-enabled client receives and sends Liberty messages in the body of HTTP requests and responses. Therefore,
1076 Liberty-enabled clients have no restrictions on the size of the Liberty protocol messages.

1077 A Liberty-enabled proxy is an HTTP proxy (typically a WAP gateway) that emulates a Liberty-enabled client. Unless
1078 stated otherwise, all statements referring to "LECP" are to be understood as statements about both Liberty-enabled
1079 clients and Liberty-enabled proxies.

1080 In some environments the successful deployment of a Liberty-Enabled proxy may require that service providers in
1081 those environments perform operations in addition to those described below. Such cases, and specific guidance for
1082 them, are covered in [LibertyImplGuide].

1083 The following URI-based identifier must be used when referencing this specific profile (for example,
1084 <lib:ProtocolProfile> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message):

1085 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/lecp>

1086 A LECP, in addition to meeting the common requirements for profiles in Section 3.1, MUST indicate that it is a
1087 LECP by including a Liberty-Enabled header or entry in the value of the HTTP User-Agent header for each HTTP
1088 request it makes. The preferred method is the Liberty-Enabled header. The formats of the Liberty-Enabled header and
1089 User-Agent header entry are defined in Section 3.2.4.1.

1090 3.2.4.1. Liberty-Enabled Indications

1091 A LECP SHOULD add the Liberty-Enabled header to each HTTP request. The Liberty-Enabled header MUST be
1092 named `Liberty-Enabled` and be defined as using Augmented BNF as specified in section 2 of [RFC2616].

```
1093
1094 Liberty-Enabled = "Liberty-Enabled" ":" LIB_Version ["," 1#Extension]
1095 LIB_Version = "LIBV" "=" 1*absoluteURI
1096 ; any spaces or commas in the absoluteURI MUST be escaped as defined in section 2.4 of [RFC 2396]
1097 Extension = ExtName "=" ExtValue
1098 ExtName = {".", host} | <any field-value but ".", "," or "="> <any field-value but "=" or ",">
1099 ExtValue = <any field-value but ",">
1100
```

1101 The comment, field-value, and product productions are defined in [RFC2616]. `LIB_Version` identifies the versions
1102 of the Liberty specifications that are supported by this LECP. Each version is identified by a URI. Service providers or
1103 identity providers receiving a Liberty-Enabled header MUST ignore any URIs listed in the `LIB_Version` production
1104 that they do not recognize. All LECPs compliant with this specification MUST send out, at minimum, the URI
1105 `http://projectliberty.org/specs/v1` as a value in the `LIB_Version` production. It SHOULD precede this
1106 with the URI `urn:liberty:idf:2003-08` if it supports version 1.2 requests and knows that the identity providers
1107 available to it also support version 1.2 requests and responses. It MUST NOT include this URI if it knows that the
1108 identity providers available to it cannot process version 1.2 messages. The ordering of the URIs in the `LIB_Version`
1109 header is meaningful; therefore, service providers and identity providers are encouraged to use the first version in
1110 the list that they support. Supported Liberty versions are not negotiated between the LECP and the service provider.
1111 The LECP advertises what version it supports; the service provider MUST return the response for the corresponding
1112 version as defined in step 3 below.

1113 Optional extensions MAY be added to the Liberty-Enabled header to indicate new information. The value of the
1114 `ExtName` production MUST use the "`host`" ";" prefixed form if the new extension name has not been standardized
1115 and registered with Liberty or its designated registration authorities. The value of the host production MUST be an
1116 IP or DNS address that is owned by the issuer of the new name. By using the DNS/IP prefix, effectively namespace
1117 collisions can be prevented without the need of introducing another centralized registration agency.

1118 A LECP MAY include the Liberty-Agent header in its requests. This header provides information about the software
1119 implementing the LECP functionality and is similar to the User-Agent and Server headers in HTTP.

```
1120
1121     Liberty-Agent = "Liberty-Agent" ":" 1*( product | comment )
1122
```

1123 Note:

1124 The reason for introducing the new header (that is, Liberty-Enabled) rather than using User-Agent is that a
1125 LECP may be a Liberty-enabled proxy. In such a case the information about the Liberty-enabled proxy would
1126 not be in the User-Agent header. In theory the information could be in the VIA header. However, for security
1127 reasons, values in the VIA header can be collapsed, and comments (where software information would be
1128 recorded) can always be removed. As such, the VIA header is not suitable. Using the User-Agent header
1129 for a Liberty-enabled client and the Liberty-Agent header for a Liberty-enabled proxy was also discussed.
1130 However, this approach seemed too complex.

1131 Originally the Liberty-Agent header was going to be part of the Liberty-Enabled header. However, header
 1132 lengths in HTTP implementations are limited; therefore, putting this information in its own header was
 1133 considered the preferred approach.

1134 A LECP MAY add a Liberty-Enabled entry in the HTTP User-Agent request header. The HTTP User-Agent header is
 1135 specified in [RFC2616]. A LECP MAY include in the value of this header the Liberty-Enabled string as defined
 1136 above for the Liberty-Enabled header.

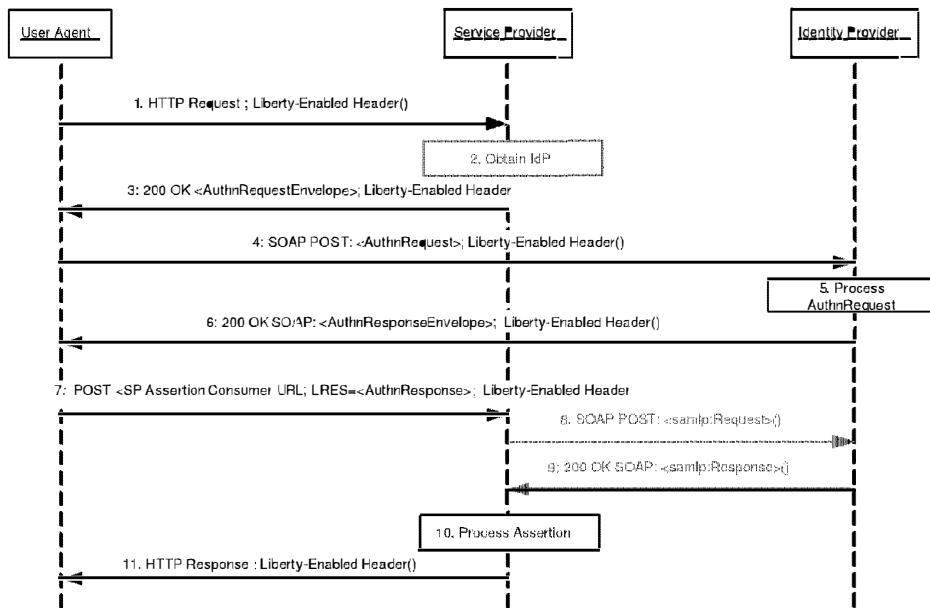
1137 **Note:**

1138 The reason for adding information to the User-Agent header is to allow for Liberty-enabled client products
 1139 that must rely on a platform that cannot be instructed to insert new headers in each HTTP request.

1140 The User-Agent header is often overloaded; therefore, the Liberty-Enabled header should be the first choice
 1141 for any implementation of a LECP. The entry in the User-Agent header then remains as a last resort.

1142 **3.2.4.2. Interactions**

1143 Figure 5 illustrates the Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile for single sign-on.



1144

1145 **Figure 5. Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile for single sign-on**

1146 This profile description assumes that the user agent has already authenticated at the identity provider prior to step 1.
 1147 Thus, a valid session exists for the user agent at the identity provider.

1148 The LECP receives authentication requests from the service provider in the body of the HTTP response. The
 1149 LECP submits this authentication request as a SOAP request to the identity provider. Because this SOAP re-
 1150 quest is between the LECP and the identity provider, TLS authentication cannot be performed between service
 1151 provider and identity provider; therefore, service providers and identity providers MUST rely on the signature of
 1152 the <lib:AuthnRequest> and the returned <saml:Assertion>, respectively, for mutual authentication.

1153 When implementing this profile, processing rules for steps 5, 10, and 11 defined in Section 3.2.1 for single sign-on
 1154 profiles MUST be followed, while steps 2, 8, and 9 MUST be omitted. Additionally, the following rules MUST be
 1155 observed as they relate to steps 1, 3, 4, 6, and 7:

1156 **3.2.4.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Service Provider**

1157 In step 1, the user agent accesses the service provider with the Liberty-Enabled header (or with the Liberty-Enabled
1158 entry in the User-Agent header) included in the HTTP request

1159 The HTTP request MUST contain only one Liberty-Enabled header. Hence if a proxy receives an HTTP request
1160 that contains a Liberty-Enabled header, it MUST NOT add another Liberty-Enabled header. However, a proxy
1161 MAY replace the Liberty-Enabled header. A proxy that replaces or adds a Liberty-Enabled header MUST process
1162 `<lib:AuthnRequest>` messages as defined in steps 3 and 4 as well as `<lib:AuthnResponse>` messages as
1163 specified in steps 6 and 7.

1164 It is RECOMMENDED that a LECP add "application/vnd.liberty-request+xml" as one of its supported
1165 content types to the Accept header.

1166 **3.2.4.2.2. Step 3: HTTP Response with <AuthnRequest>**

1167 In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service issues an HTTP 200 OK response to the user agent. The
1168 response MUST contain a single `<lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>` with content as defined in [LibertyProtSchema].
1169 If a service provider receives a Liberty-Enabled header, or a User-Agent header with the Liberty-Enabled entry, the
1170 service provider MUST respond according to the Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile and include a Liberty-
1171 Enabled header in its response. Hence service providers MUST support the Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile.

1172 The processing rules and default values for the Liberty-Enabled indications are as defined in Section 3.2.4.1. The
1173 service provider MAY advertise any Liberty version supported in this header, not only the version used for the specific
1174 response.

1175 The HTTP response MUST contain a Content-Type header with the value `application/vnd.liberty-request+xml`
1176 unless the LECP and service provider have negotiated a different format.

1177 A service provider MAY provide a list of identity providers it recognizes by including the `<lib:IDPList>` element
1178 in the `<lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>`. The format and processing rules for the identity provider list MUST be as
1179 defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1180 **Note:**

1181 In cases where a value for the `<lib:GetComplete>` element is provided within `<lib:IDPList>`, the URI
1182 value for this element MUST specify https as the URL `<scheme>`.

1183 The service provider MUST specify a URL for receiving `<AuthnResponse>` elements, locally generated
1184 by the intermediary, by including the `<lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>` element in the
1185 `<lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>`.

1186 The following example demonstrates the usage of the `<lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>`:

```

1187
1188     <?xml version="1.0" ?>
1189     <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope xmlns:lib="urn:liberty:idff:2003-08">
1190         <lib:AuthnRequest>
1191             . . . AuthnRequest goes here . .
1192             </lib:AuthnRequest>
1193             <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>
1194                 https://service-provider.com/libertyLogin
1195             </lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>
1196             <lib:IDPList>
1197                 . . . IdP list goes here . .
1198             </lib:IDPList>
1199         </lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>

```

1200 If the service provider does not support the LECP-advertised Liberty version, the service provider MUST return to the
 1201 LECP an HTTP 501 response with the reason phrase "Unsupported Liberty Version."

1202 The responses in step 3 and step 6 SHOULD NOT be cached. To this end service providers and identity providers
 1203 SHOULD place both "Cache-Control: no-cache" and "Pragma: no-cache" on their responses to ensure that
 1204 the LECP and any intervening proxies will not cache the response.

1205 **3.2.4.2.3. Step 4: HTTP Request with <AuthnRequest>**

1206 In step 4, the LECP determines the appropriate identity provider to use and then issues an HTTP POST of the
 1207 <lib:AuthnRequest> in the body of a SOAP message to the identity provider's single sign-on service URL. The
 1208 request MUST contain the same <lib:AuthnRequest> as was received in the <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>
 1209 from the service provider in step 3.

1210 **Note:**

1211 The identity provider list can be used by the LECP to create a user identifier to be presented to the Principal.
 1212 For example, the LECP could compare the list of the Principal's known identities (and the identities of the
 1213 identity provider that provides those identities) against the list provided by the service provider and then only
 1214 display the intersection.

1215 If the LECP discovers a syntax error due to the service provider or cannot proceed any further for other reasons (for
 1216 example, cannot resolve identity provider, cannot reach the identity provider, etc.), the LECP MUST return to the
 1217 service provider a <lib:AuthnResponse> with a <samlp:Status> indicating the desired error element as defined
 1218 in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnResponse> containing the error status MUST be sent using a POST to the
 1219 service provider's assertion consumer service URL obtained from the <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>
 1220 element of the <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>. The POST MUST be a form that contains the field LARES with
 1221 the value being the <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema], containing the
 1222 <samlp:Status>. The <lib:AuthnResponse> MUST be encoded by applying a base64 transformation (refer to
 1223 [RFC2045]) to the <lib:AuthnResponse> and all its elements.

1224 **3.2.4.2.4. Step 6: HTTP Response with <AuthnResponse>**

1225 In step 6, the identity provider responds to the <lib:AuthnRequest> by issuing an HTTP 200 OK response. The
 1226 response MUST contain a single <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> in the body of a SOAP message with content as
 1227 defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1228 The identity provider MUST include the Liberty-Enabled HTTP header following the same processing rules as defined
 1229 in 3.2.5.1.

1230 The Content-Type MUST be set to application/vnd.liberty-response+xml.

1231 If the identity provider discovers a syntax error due to the service provider or LECP or cannot proceed any further
 1232 for other reasons (for example, an unsupported Liberty version), the identity provider MUST return to the LECP a
 1233 <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> containing a <lib:AuthnResponse> with a <samlp:Status> indicating the
 1234 desired error element as defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1235 **3.2.4.2.5. Step 7: Posting the Form Containing the <AuthnResponse>**

1236 In step 7, the LECP issues an HTTP POST of the <lib:AuthnResponse> that was received in the
 1237 <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> SOAP response in step 6. The <lib:AuthnResponse> MUST
 1238 be sent using a POST to the service provider's assertion consumer service URL identified by the
 1239 <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL> element within the <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> obtained
 1240 from the identity provider in step 6. The POST MUST be a form that contains the field LARES with the value being
 1241 the <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnResponse>
 1242 MUST be encoded by applying a base64 transformation (refer to [RFC2045]) to the <lib:AuthnResponse> and

1243 all its elements. The service provider's assertion consumer service URL used as the target of the form POST MUST
 1244 specify [https](https://) as the URL scheme; if another scheme is specified, it MUST be treated as an error by the identity
 1245 provider.

1246 If the LECP discovers an error (for example, syntax error in identity provider response), the LECP MUST return
 1247 to the service provider a <[lib:AuthnResponse](#)> with a <[samlp:Status](#)> indicating the appropriate error ele-
 1248 ment as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <[ProviderID](#)> in the <[lib:AuthnResponse](#)> MUST be set to
 1249 [urn:liberty:idp:lecp](#). The <[lib:AuthnResponse](#)> containing the error status MUST be sent using a POST to the
 1250 service provider's assertion consumer service URL. The POST MUST be a form that contains the field named LARES
 1251 with its value being the <[lib:AuthnResponse](#)> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with format-
 1252 ting as specified Section 3.1.2. Any <[lib:AuthnResponse](#)> messages created by the identity provider MUST NOT
 1253 be sent to the service provider.

1254 3.3. Register Name Identifier Profiles

1255 This section defines the profiles by which a provider may register or change a name identifier for a Principal. This
 1256 message exchange is optional. During federation, the identity provider supplies an opaque handle identifying the
 1257 Principle. This is the <[lib:IDPPProvidedNameIdentifier](#)>. If neither provider involved in the federation opts
 1258 to register any other name identifier, then this initial <[lib:IDPPProvidedNameIdentifier](#)> is to be used by both
 1259 providers.

1260 An identity provider may choose to register a new <[lib:IDPPProvidedNameIdentifier](#)> at any time
 1261 subsequent to federation, using this protocol. Additionally, a service provider may choose to regis-
 1262 ter a <[lib:SPPProvidedNameIdentifier](#)>, which it expects the identity provider to use (instead of the
 1263 <[lib:IDPPProvidedNameIdentifier](#)>) when communicating with it about the Principal.

1264 Two profiles are specified: HTTP-Redirect-Based and SOAP/HTTP-based.

1265 Either the identity or service provider may initiate the register name identifier protocol. The available profiles are
 1266 defined in Section 3.3.1 and Section 3.3.2, and vary slightly based on whether the protocol was initiated by the identity
 1267 or service provider:

1268 • Register Name Identifier Initiated at Identity Provider

1269 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the identity provider and the
 1270 service provider.

1271 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the identity provider to the service provider.

1272 • Register Name Identifier Initiated at Service Provider

1273 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the service provider and the
 1274 identity provider.

1275 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the service provider to the identity provider.

1276 The interactions and processing rules for the SOAP/HTTP-based and HTTP-redirect-based profiles are essentially the
 1277 same regardless of whether the profile was initiated at the service provider or at the identity provider, but the message
 1278 flow directions are reversed.

1279 The register name identifier profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

- 1280 • **RegisterNameIdentifierProtocolProfile:** The service provider's preferred register name identifier pro-
1281 file, which should be used by the identity provider when registering a new identifier. This would specify the URI
1282 based identifier for one of the IDP Initiated register name identifier profiles.
- 1283 • **RegisterNameIdentifierServiceURL:** The URL used for user-agent-based Register Name Identifier Protocol
1284 profiles.
- 1285 • **RegisterNameIdentifierServiceReturnURL:** The provider's redirecting URL for use after HTTP name
1286 registration has taken place.
- 1287 • **SOAPEndpoint:** The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty SOAP
1288 messages are sent.

1289 **3.3.1. Register Name Identifier Initiated at Identity Provider**

1290 An identity provider MAY change the <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> it has assigned a Principal and
1291 transmit that information to a service provider. The <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> MAY be changed
1292 without changing any federations. The reasons an identity provider may wish to change the name identifier
1293 for a Principal are implementation dependent, and thus outside the scope of this specification. Changing the
1294 <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> MAY be accomplished in either an HTTP-Redirect-Based or SOAP/HTTP
1295 mode.

1296 **3.3.1.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile**

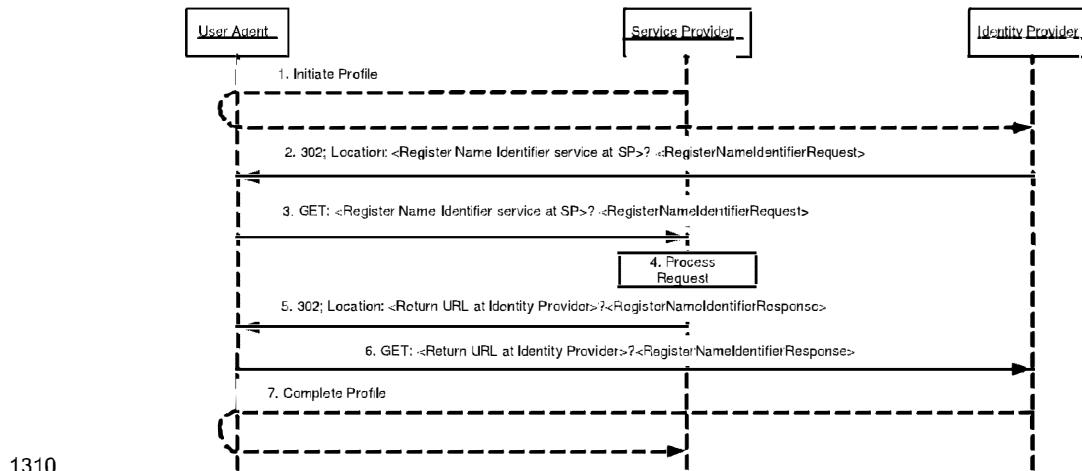
1297 A HTTP-redirect-based register name identifier profile cannot be self-initiated by an identity provider, but must be a
1298 triggered by a message, such as an <lib:AuthnRequest>. We note that we do not normatively specify when and
1299 how the identity provider can initiate this profile - that is left to the discretion of the identity provider. As an example,
1300 it may be triggered by a message, such as an <lib:AuthnRequest>. When the identity provider decides to initiate
1301 the profile in this case, it will insert this profile between the AuthnRequest/AuthnResponse transactions.

1302 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on using HTTP 302 redirects to communicate register name identifier messages
1303 from the identity provider to the service provider. The HTTP-Redirect Register Name Identifier Profile (Figure 6)
1304 illustrates this transaction.

1305 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1306 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rni-idp-http>

1307 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element `RegisteredNameIdentifierProtocolProfile`
1308 when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving register name identifier
1309 messages via an HTTP 302 redirect.



1310

Figure 6. Register Name Identifier Profile.

1311 In an example scenario, the service provider makes an `<lib:AuthnRequest>` to the identity provider for authentication of the Principal's User Agent (step 1). The identity provider effects an `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` change in the service provider via a URL redirection. The profile is as follows:

1315 3.3.1.1.1. Step 1: Initiate Profile

1316 This interaction is not normatively specified as part of the profile, but shown for illustrative purposes.

1317 3.3.1.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Service Provider Register Name Identifier Service

1318 In step 2, the identity provider redirects the user agent to the register name identifier service at the service provider.

1319 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1320 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the service provider's register name identifier service URL.
- 1321 • The service provider's register name identifier service URL MUST specify `https` as the URL scheme; if another scheme is specified, the identity provider MUST NOT redirect to the service provider.
- 1323 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a `<query>` component containing the `<lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>` protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.

1325 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

1326
 1327 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
 1328 <other headers>
 1329 Location : https://<Service Provider Register Name Identifier service URL>?<query>
 1330 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
 1331

1332 where:

1333 <Service Provider Register Name Identifier service URL>

1334 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the register name identifier service URL
 1335 at the service provider.

1336 <query>= ...<URL-encoded RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>...

1337 The <query> component MUST contain a single register name identifier request.

1338 **3.3.1.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Register Name Identifier Service**

1339 In step 3, the user agent accesses the service provider's register name identifier service URL with the
 1340 <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1341 **3.3.1.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Register Name Identifier Request**

1342 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> according to the
 1343 rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1344 The service provider MAY remove the old name identifier after registering the new name identifier.

1345 **3.3.1.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider return URL with the Register Name Identifier Response**

1347 In step 5, the service provider's register name identifier service responds and redirects the user agent back to identity
 1348 provider using a return URL location specified in the RegisterNameIdentifierServiceReturnURL metadata element. If
 1349 the URL-encoded <lib: RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> message received in step 3 contains a parameter
 1350 named RelayState, then the service provider MUST include a <query> component containing the same RelayState
 1351 parameter and its value in its response to the identity provider.

1352 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

1353 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the identity providers return URL specified in the RegisterNameIdentifierServiceReturnURL metadata element.

1355 • The identity provider's return URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is specified, the
 1356 service provider MUST NOT redirect to the identity provider.

1357 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>
 1358 protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.

1359 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1360
1361 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1362 <other headers>
1363 Location : https://<Identity Provider Service Return URL>?<query>
1364 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1365
```

1366 where:

1367 <Identity Provider Service Return URL>

1368 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the return URL at the identity provider.

1369 <query>= ...<URL-encoded RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>...

1370 The <query> component MUST contain a single register name identifier response. The <URL-encoded RegisterNameIdentifierResponse> component MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the URL-encoded register name identifier message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in the step 3 message, then a RelayState parameter MUST NOT be specified in the <URL-encoded RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>.

1375 3.3.1.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider return URL with the Register Name Identifier Response

1377 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1378 3.3.1.1.7. Step 7: Complete profile

1379 This concludes the initial sequence, which triggered the initiation of this profile.

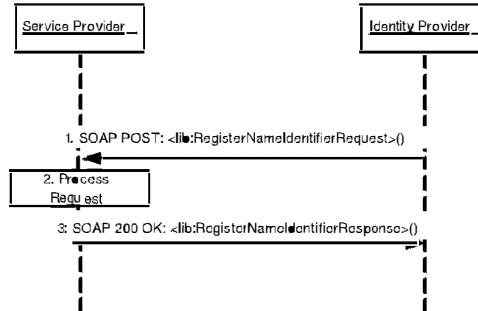
1380 3.3.1.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1381 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1382 URI: http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rn/-idp-soap

1383 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element RegisterNameIdentifierProtocolProfile when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving register name identifier messages via SOAP over HTTP.

1386 The steps involved in the SOAP/HTTP-based profile MUST utilize the SOAP binding for Liberty as defined in Section 2.1. See Figure 7.



1388

1389 **Figure 7. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for registering name identifiers**

1390 3.3.1.2.1. Step 1 Initiate Profile

1391 In step 1, the identity provider sends a <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> protocol message to the service provider's SOAP endpoint specifying <lib:SPPprovidedNameIdentifier>, <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>, and <lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier> as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:SPPprovidedNameIdentifier> will only contain a value if the service provider has previously used the register name identifier profile.

1396 3.3.1.2.2. Step 2: Process Request

1397 Service provider records new <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>.

1398 3.3.1.2.3. Step 3: Response to Register Name Identifier

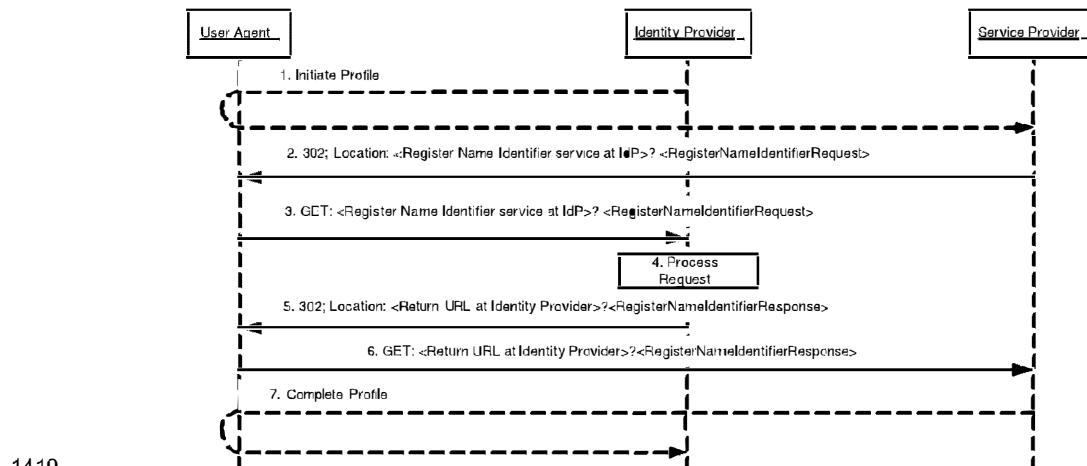
1399 The service provider, after successfully registering the new <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> provided by the 1400 identity provider, MUST respond with a <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse> according to the processing 1401 rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1402 3.3.2. Register Name Identifier Initiated at Service Provider

1403 A service provider may register, or change a <lib:SPPprovidedNameIdentifier> which is a name identifier it expects the identity provider to use when communicating with it about the Principal. Until it 1404 registers a <lib:SPPprovidedNameIdentifier>, an identity provider will continue to use the current 1405 <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> when referring to the Principal.

1407 3.3.2.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

1408 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on the use of an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a register name identifier 1409 message from the service provider to the identity provider.



1411 **Figure 8. SP-Initiated Register Name Identifier Profile.**

1412 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

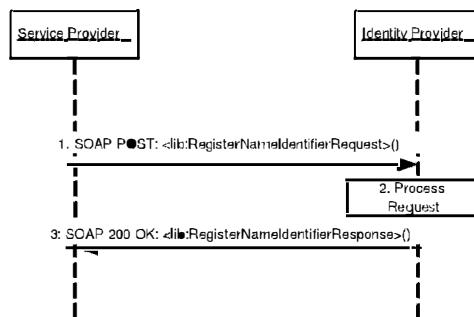
1413 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rni-sp-http>

1414 A HTTP-redirect-based register name identifier profile can be self-initiated by a service provider to change the 1415 <lib:SPPprovidedNameIdentifier>. This does not normatively specify when and how the service provider 1416 can initiate this profile; that is left to the discretion of the service provider. The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on

1417 using HTTP 302 redirects to communicate register name identifier messages from the service provider to the identity provider.
 1418 The service provider effects a <lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier> change in the identity provider
 1419 via a URL redirection. For a discussion of the interactions and processing steps, refer to Section 3.3.1.1. When
 1420 reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider and identity provider in the interaction diagram
 1421 and processing steps 2-6. See Figure 8. Note that in step 4 the old SPProvidedNameIdentifier SHOULD be removed
 1422 at the IdP.

1423 3.3.2.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1424 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using SOAP over HTTP to communicate register name identifier messages
 1425 from the service provider to the identity provider. For a discussion of the interactions and processing steps, refer to
 1426 Section 3.3.1.2. When reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider and identity provider in
 1427 the interaction diagram and processing steps. See Figure 9.



1428

Figure 9. SP-Initiated SOAP/HTTP-based profile for registering name identifiers

1430 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1431 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rni-sp-soap>

1432 In step 1, the service provider sends a <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> protocol mes-
 1433 sage to the identity provider's SOAP endpoint specifying <lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>,
 1434 <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>, and <lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier> as defined in [Liber-
 1435 tyProtSchema]. The <lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier> will only contain a value if the service provider has
 1436 previously used the register name identifier profile.

1437 3.4. Identity Federation Termination Notification Profiles

1438 The Liberty identity federation termination notification profiles specify how service providers and identity providers
 1439 are notified of federation termination (also known as defederation).

1440 **Note:**

1441 Other means of federation termination are possible, such as federation expiration and termination of business
 1442 agreements between service providers and identity providers. These means of federation termination are
 1443 outside the scope of this specification.

1444 Identity federation termination can be initiated at either the identity provider or the service provider. The Principal
 1445 SHOULD have been authenticated by the provider at which identity federation termination is being initiated. The
 1446 available profiles are defined in Section 3.4.1 and Section 3.4.2, depending on whether the identity federation
 1447 termination notification process was initiated at the identity provider or service provider.

1448 • Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Identity Provider

1449 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the identity provider and the
1450 service provider.

1451 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the identity provider to the service provider.

1452 • Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Service Provider

1453 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the service provider and the
1454 identity provider.

1455 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the service provider to the identity provider.

1456 The interactions and processing rules for the SOAP/HTTP-based and HTTP-redirect-based profiles are essentially the
1457 same regardless of whether federation termination notification was initiated at the service provider or at the identity
1458 provider.

1459 The identity federation termination notification profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in
1460 [libertyMetadata]:

1461 • `FederationTerminationServiceURL` - The URL at the service provider or identity provider to which identity
1462 federation termination notifications are sent. It is documented in these profiles as "federation termination service
1463 URL."

1464 • `FederationTerminationServiceReturnURL` - The URL used by the service provider or identity provider
1465 when redirecting the user agent at the end of the federation termination notification profile process.

1466 • `FederationTerminationNotificationProtocolProfile` - Used by the identity provider to determine
1467 which federation termination notification profile MUST be used when communicating with the service provider.

1468 • `SOAPEndpoint` - The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty SOAP
1469 messages are sent.

1470 3.4.1. Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Identity Provider

1471 The profiles in Section 3.4.1.1 and Section 3.4.1.2 are specific to identity federation termination when initiated at the
1472 identity provider. Effectively, when using these profiles, the identity provider is stating to the service provider that it
1473 will no longer provide the Principal's identity information to the service provider and that the identity provider will no
1474 longer respond to any requests by the service provider on behalf of the Principal.

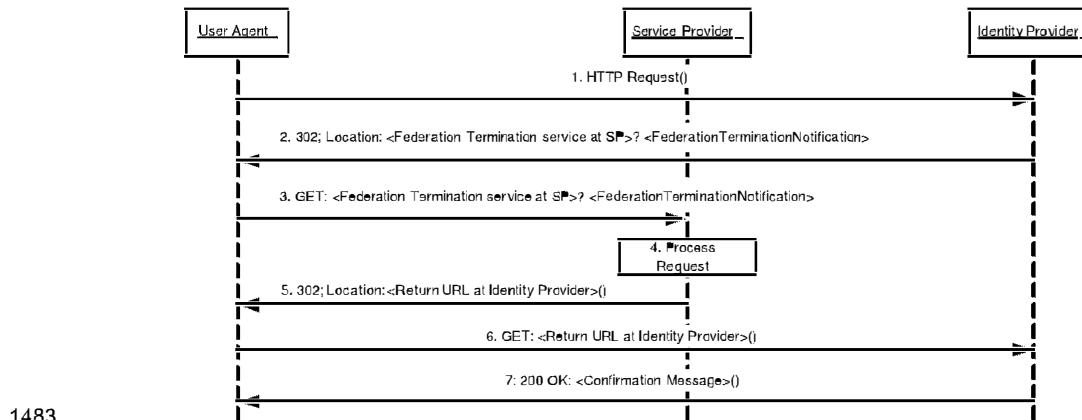
1475 3.4.1.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

1476 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on using HTTP 302 redirect to communicate federation termination notification
1477 messages from the identity provider to the service provider. See Figure 10.

1478 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1479 URI: `http://prcjectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-idp-http`

1480 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element `FederationTerminationNotification-`
1481 `ProtocolProfile` when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving feder-
1482 ation termination notifications via an HTTP 302 redirect.



1483

Figure 10. HTTP-redirect-based profile for federation termination

1484 This profile description assumes the following preconditions:

1485 • The Principal's identity at the service provider is federated with his/her identity at the identity provider.
 1486 • The Principal has requested to the identity provider that the federation be terminated.
 1487 • The Principal has authenticated with the identity provider.

1489 **3.4.1.1.1. Step 1: Accessing the Federation Termination Service**

1490 In step 1, the user agent accesses the identity federation termination service URL at the identity provider specifying
 1491 the service provider with which identity federation termination should occur. How the service provider is specified is
 1492 implementation-dependent and, as such, is out of the scope of this specification.

1493 **3.4.1.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Service Provider**

1494 In step 2, the identity provider's federation termination service URL responds and redirects the user agent to the
 1495 federation termination service at the service provider.

1496 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

1497 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the service provider's federation termination service URL.
 1498 • The service provider's federation termination service URI MUST specify https as the URI scheme; if another
 1499 scheme is specified, the identity provider MUST NOT redirect to the service provider.
 1500 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the
 1501 <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with
 1502 formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.

Liberty Alliance Project:
Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification

Version: 1.2-errata-v2.0

1503 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1504 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1505 <other headers>
1506 Location : https://<Service Provider Federation Termination service URL>?<query>
1507 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1508
1509
```

1510 where:

1511 <Service Provider Federation Termination service URL>

1512 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the federation termination service URL at
1513 the service provider.

1514 <query>= ...<URL-encoded FederationTerminationNotification>...

1515 The <query> component MUST contain a single terminate federation request.

1516 **3.4.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Federation Termination Service**

1517 In step 3, the user agent accesses the service provider's federation termination service URL with the
1518 <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect re-
1519 quest.

1520 **3.4.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Notification**

1521 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> according to
1522 the rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1523 The service provider MAY remove any locally stored references to the name identifier it received from the identity
1524 provider in the <lib:FederationTerminationNotification>.

1525 **3.4.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider Return URL**

1526 In step 5, the service provider's federation termination service responds and redirects the user agent back to identity
1527 provider using a return URL location specified in the FederationTerminationServiceReturnURL metadata element.
1528 If the URL-encoded <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> message received in step 3 contains a
1529 parameter named RelayState, then the service provider MUST include a <query> component containing the same
1530 RelayState parameter and its value in its response to the identity provider.

1531 No success or failure message should be conveyed in this HTTP redirect. The sole purpose of this redirect is to return
1532 the user agent to the identity provider where the federation termination process began.

1533 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1534 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1535 <other headers>
1536 Location : https://<Identity Provider Service Return URL>?<query>
1537 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1538
1539
1540
```

1541 where:

1542 <Identity Provider Service Return URL>

1543 This element provides the components of the return URL at the identity provider.

1544 <query>= . . . RelayState=<. . .>

1545 The <query> component MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the
1546 URL-encoded federation termination message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in the step
1547 3 message, then a RelayState parameter MUST NOT be specified in the <query> component.

1548 3.4.1.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider Return URL

1549 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1550 3.4.1.1.7. Step 7: Confirmation

1551 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of identity federation termination
1552 with the specific service provider.

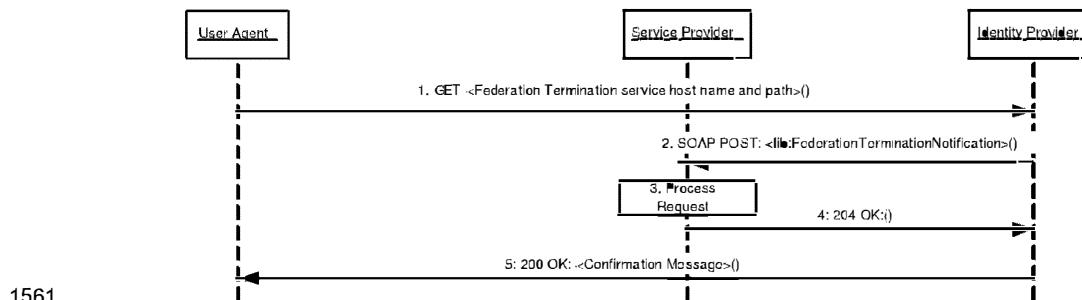
1553 3.4.1.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1554 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using asynchronous SOAP over HTTP to communicate federation termination
1555 notification messages from the identity provider to the service provider. See Figure 11.

1556 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1557 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-idp-soap>

1558 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element FederationTerminationNotification-
1559 ProtocolProfile when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving feder-
1560 ation termination notifications via SOAP over HTTP.



1561

Figure 11. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for federation termination

1562 This profile description assumes the following preconditions:

1563 • The Principal's identity at the service provider is federated with his/her identity at the identity provider.

1564 • The Principal has authenticated with the identity provider:

1565 • The Principal has requested that the identity provider terminate the federation.

1567 3.4.1.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Federation Termination Service

1568 In step 1, the user agent accesses the identity federation termination service URL at the identity provider specifying
1569 the service provider for with which identity federation termination should occur. How the service provider is specified
1570 is implementation-dependent and, as such, is out of the scope of this specification.

1571 3.4.1.2.2. Step 2: Notification of Federation Termination

1572 In step 2, the identity provider sends an asynchronous SOAP over HTTP notification message to the service provider's
1573 SOAP endpoint. The SOAP message MUST contain exactly one <lib:FederationTerminationNotification>
1574 element in the SOAP body and adhere to the construction rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1575 If a SOAP fault occurs, the identity provider SHOULD employ best effort to resolve the fault condition and resend the
1576 federation termination notification message to the service provider.

1577 3.4.1.2.3. Step 3: Processing the Notification

1578 In step 3, the service provider MUST process the <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> according to
1579 the rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1580 The service provider MAY remove any locally stored references to the name identifier it received from the identity
1581 provider in the <lib:FederationTerminationNotification>.

1582 3.4.1.2.4. Step 4: Responding to the Notification

1583 In step 4, the service provider MUST respond to the <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> with an
1584 HTTP 204 OK response.

1585 3.4.1.2.5. Step 5: Confirmation

1586 In step 5, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of identity federation termination
1587 with the specific service provider.

1588 3.4.2. Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Service Provider

1589 The profiles in Section 3.4.2.1 and Section 3.4.2.2 are specific to identity federation termination notification when
1590 initiated by a Principal at the service provider. Effectively, when using this profile, the service provider is stating to the
1591 identity provider that the Principal has requested that the identity provider no longer provide the Principal's identity
1592 information to the service provider and that service provider will no longer ask the identity provider to do anything on
1593 the behalf of the Principal.

1594 It is RECOMMENDED that the service provider, after initiating or receiving a federation termination notification,
1595 invalidate the local session for the Principal that was authenticated at the identity provider with which federation has
1596 been terminated. If the Principal was locally authenticated at the service provider, the service provider MAY continue
1597 to maintain a local session for the Principal. If the Principal wants to engage in a single sign-on session with identity
1598 provider again, the service provider MUST first federate with identity provider the given Principal.

1599 3.4.2.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

1600 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on the use of an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a federation termination
1601 notification message from the service provider to the identity provider. For a discussion of the interactions and
1602 processing steps, refer to Section 3.4.1.1. When reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider
1603 and identity provider in the interaction diagram and processing steps.

1604 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1605 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-sp-http>

1606 This URI identifier is really only meant for service provider consumption and as such is not needed in any provider
1607 metadata.

1608 **3.4.2.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile**

1609 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using asynchronous SOAP over HTTP to communicate federation termination
1610 notification messages from the service provider to the identity provider. For a discussion of the interactions and
1611 processing steps, refer to 3.4.1.2. When reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider and
1612 identity provider in the interaction diagram and processing steps.

1613 The following URL-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1614 URI: <http://prcjectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-sp-soap>

1615 This URI identifier is really only meant for service provider consumption and as such is not needed in any provider
1616 metadata.

1617 **3.5. Single Logout Profiles**

1618 The single logout profiles synchronize session logout functionality across all sessions that were authenticated by a
1619 particular identity provider. The single logout can be initiated at either the identity provider or the service provider.
1620 In either case, the identity provider will then communicate a logout request to each service provider with which it
1621 has established a session for the Principal. The negotiation of which single logout profile the identity provider uses
1622 to communicate with each service provider is based upon the SingleLogoutProtocolProfile provider metadata element
1623 defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1624 The available profiles are defined in Section 3.5.1 and Section 3.5.2, depending on whether the single logout is initiated
1625 at the identity provider or service provider:

1626 • *Single Logout Initiated at Identity Provider*

1627 • HTTP-Based: Relies on using either HTTP 302 redirects or HTTP GET requests to communicate logout
1628 requests from an identity provider to the service providers.

1629 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on SOAP over HTTP messaging to communicate logout requests from an identity
1630 provider to the service providers.

1631 • *Single Logout Initiated at Service Provider*

1632 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a logout request with the identity
1633 provider.

1634 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on SOAP over HTTP messaging to communicate a logout request from a service
1635 provider to an identity provider.

1636 The single logout profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

1637 • *SingleLogoutServiceURL* — The URL at the service provider or identity provider to which single logout
1638 requests are sent. It is described in these profiles as "single logout service URL."

1639 • `SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL`— The URL used by the service provider when redirecting the user agent to
1640 the identity provider at the end of the single logout profile process.

1641 • `SingleLogoutProtocolProfile` — Used by the identity provider to determine which single logout request
1642 profile MUST be used when communicating with the service provider.

1643 • `SOAPEndpoint` — The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty
1644 SOAP messages are sent.

1645 3.5.1. Single Logout Initiated at Identity Provider

1646 The profiles in 3.5.1.1 through 3.5.1.2 are specific to a single logout when initiated by a user agent at the identity
1647 provider.

1648 3.5.1.1. HTTP-Based Profile

1649 The HTTP-based profile defines two possible implementations that an identity provider may use. The first
1650 implementation relies on using HTTP 302 redirects, while the second uses HTTP GET requests. The choice of
1651 implementation is entirely dependent upon the type of user experience the identity provider provides.

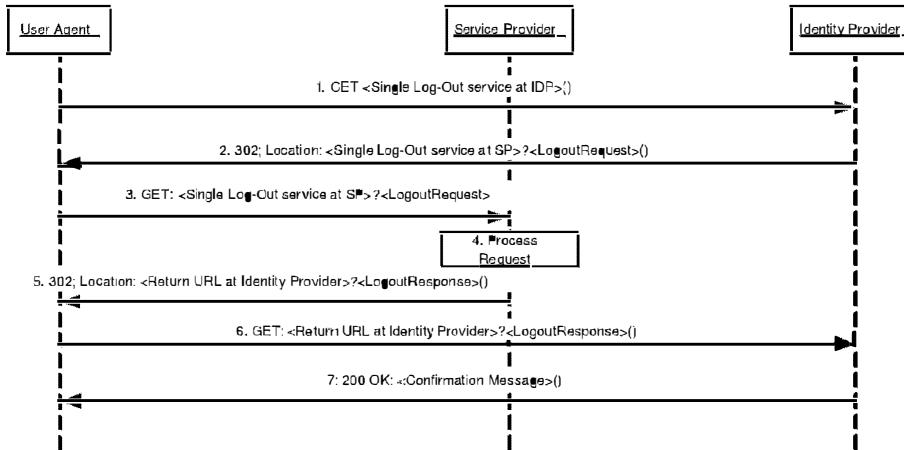
1652 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing either implementation for this specific profile:

1653 `URI: http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-idp-http`

1654 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element `SingleLogoutProtocolProfile` when
1655 the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving logout requests via either an
1656 HTTP redirect or an HTTP GET.

1657 3.5.1.1.1. HTTP-Redirect Implementation

1658 The HTTP-Redirect implementation uses HTTP 302 redirects to communicate a logout request to each service provider
1659 for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session if the
1660 service provider indicated a preference to receive logout requests via the HTTP based profile. See Figure 12.



1661
1662 Figure 12. HTTP-Redirect implementation for single logout initiated at identity provider

1663 Notes:

1664 Steps 2 through 6 may be an iterative process for requesting logouts by each service provider that has been
1665 issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current session and has indicated a preference to receive
1666 logout requests via the HTTP based profile.

1667 [RFC2616] indicates a client should detect infinite redirection loops because such loops generate network
 1668 traffic for each redirection. This requirement was introduced because previous versions of the specification
 1669 recommended a maximum of five redirections. Content developers should be aware that some clients might
 1670 implement such a fixed limitation.

1671 **3.5.1.1.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service at the Identity Provider**

1672 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the identity provider indicating that all service
 1673 providers for which this identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session
 1674 must be notified of session termination.

1675 **3.5.1.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Single Logout Service at the Service Provider**

1676 In step 2, the identity provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent to the single logout service
 1677 URL at each service provider for which the identity provider has provided an authentication assertion during the
 1678 Principal's current session with the identity provider.

1679 The redirections MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1680 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the service provider's single logout service URL.
- 1681 • The service provider's single logout service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is
 1682 specified, the identity provider MUST NOT redirect to the service provider.
- 1683 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the <lib:LogoutRequest>
 1684 protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in 3.1.2.

1685 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1686 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1687 <other headers>
1688 Location : https://<Service Provider Single Log-Out service URL>?<query>
1689 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1690
1691
```

1692 where:

1693 <Service Provider Single Log-Out service URL>

1694 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the single logout service URL at the
 1695 service provider.

1696 <query>= ...<URL-encoded LogoutRequest>...

1697 The <query> MUST contain a single logout request.

1698 **3.5.1.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Single Logout Service**

1699 In step 3, the user agent accesses the service provider's single logout service URL with the <lib:LogoutRequest>
 1700 information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1701 **3.5.1.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Request**

1702 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in
 1703 [LibertyProtSchema].

1704 The service provider MUST invalidate the session(s) of the Principal referred to in the name identifier it received from
 1705 the identity provider in the <lib:LogoutRequest>.

1706 **3.5.1.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider Return URL**

1707 In step 5, the service provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent back to the identity provider
 1708 using the return URL location obtained from the SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL metadata element. If the URL-
 1709 encoded <lib:LogoutRequest> message received in step 3 contains a parameter named RelayState, then the service
 1710 provider MUST include a <query> component containing the same RelayState parameter and its value in its response
 1711 to the identity provider.

1712 The purpose of this redirect is to return the user agent to the identity provider so that the single logout process may
 1713 continue in the same fashion with other service providers.

1714 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

1715
 1716 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
 1717 <other headers>
 1718 Location : https://<Identity Provider Service Return URL>?<query>
 1719 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>

1720 where:

1721 <Identity Provider Service Return URL>

1722 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the return URL at the identity provider.

1723 <query>= ...<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>

1724 The <query> component MUST contain a single logout response. The <URL-encoded LogoutResponse> MUST
 1725 contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the URL-encoded logout request message
 1726 obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in the step 3 message, then a RelayState parameter MUST
 1727 NOT be specified in the <URL-encoded LogoutResponse>.

1728 **3.5.1.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider Return URL**

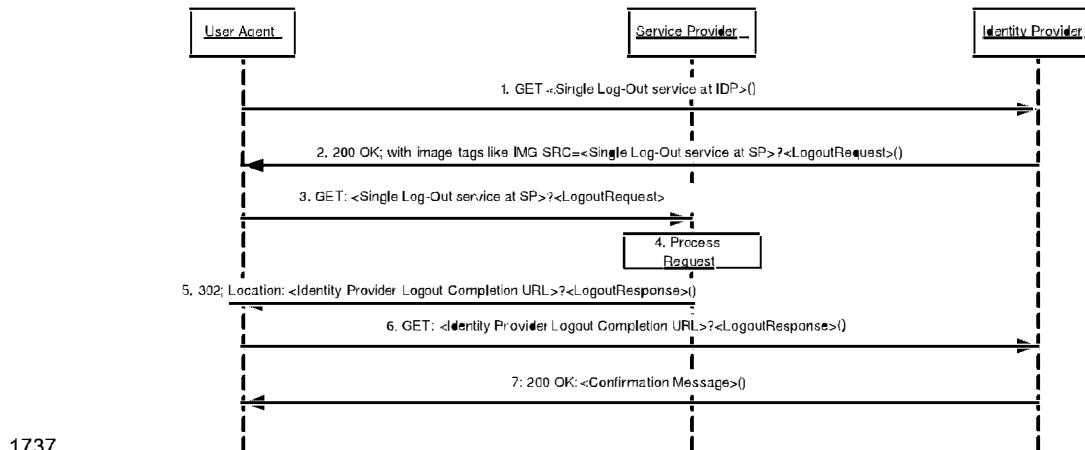
1729 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1730 **3.5.1.1.7. Step 7: Confirmation**

1731 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of a single logout has been
 1732 completed.

1733 **3.5.1.1.2. HTTP-GET Implementation**

1734 The HTTP-GET implementation uses HTTP GET requests to communicate logout requests to each service provider
 1735 for which the identity provider has provided authentication during the Principal's current session if the service provider
 1736 indicated a preference to receive logout requests via the HTTP based profile. See Figure 13.



1737

Figure 13. HTTP-GET implementation for single logout initiated at identity provider

1739 **Note:**

1740 Steps 3 through 7 may be an iterative process for requesting logout of each service provider that has been
 1741 issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current session and has indicated a preference to receive
 1742 logout requests via the HTTP based profile.

1743 **3.5.1.1.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service at the Identity Provider**

1744 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the identity provider indicating that all service
 1745 providers for which this identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session
 1746 must be notified of session termination and requested to logout the Principal.

1747 **3.5.1.1.2.2. Step 2: HTML Page Returned to User Agent with Image Tags**

1748 In step 2, the identity provider's single logout service responds with an HTML page that includes image tags
 1749 referencing the logout service URL for each of the service providers for which the identity provider has provided
 1750 an authentication assertion during the Principal's current session. The list of image tags MUST be sent in a standard
 1751 HTTP 200 response to the user agent.

1752 The image tag loads on the HTML page MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1753 • The SRC attribute MUST be set to the specific service provider's single logout service URL.
- 1754 • The service provider's single logout service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme.
- 1755 • The service provider's single logout service URL MUST include a <query> component containing the
 1756 <lib:LogoutRequest> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in
 1757 3.1.2.

1758 3.5.1.1.2.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Single Logout Service

1759 In step 3, the user agent, as a result of each image load, accesses the service provider's single logout service URL with
 1760 <lib:LogoutRequest> information attached to the URL. This step may occur multiple times if the HTTP response
 1761 includes multiple image tag statements (one for each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions
 1762 during the Principal's current session).

1763 3.5.1.1.2.4. Step 4: Processing the Request

1764 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in
 1765 [LibertyProtSchema].

1766 The service provider MUST invalidate the session of the Principal referred to in the name identifier it received from
 1767 the identity provider in the <lib:LogoutRequest>.

1768 3.5.1.1.2.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider Logout Completion URL

1769 In step 5, the service provider's single logout service responds and redirects the image load back to the identity
 1770 provider's logout completion URL. This location will typically point to an image that will be loaded by the user agent
 1771 to indicate that the logout is complete (for example, a checkmark).

1772 The logout completion URL is obtained from the SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL metadata element.

1773 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1774 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1775 <other headers>
1776 Location : https://<Identity Provider Logout Completion URL>?<query>
1777 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
```

1779 where:

1780 <Identity Provider Logout Completion URI>

1781 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the identity provider logout completion
 1782 URI at the identity provider.

1783 <query>=...<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>

1784 The <query> component MUST contain a single logout response. The <URL-encoded LogoutResponse>
 1785 component MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the URL-encoded
 1786 logout request message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in step 3 then a RelayState
 1787 message MUST NOT be specified in the <URL-encoded LogoutResponse>.

1788 3.5.1.1.2.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider Logout Completion URL

1789 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's logout completion URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1790 3.5.1.1.2.7. Step 7: Confirmation

1791 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of a single logout has been
 1792 completed.

1793 Note:

1794 One method for seamlessly returning the user agent back to the identity provider is for the HTML page
 1795 generated in step 2 to include a script that runs when the page is completely loaded (all logouts completed)
 1796 that will initiate the redirect to the identity provider.

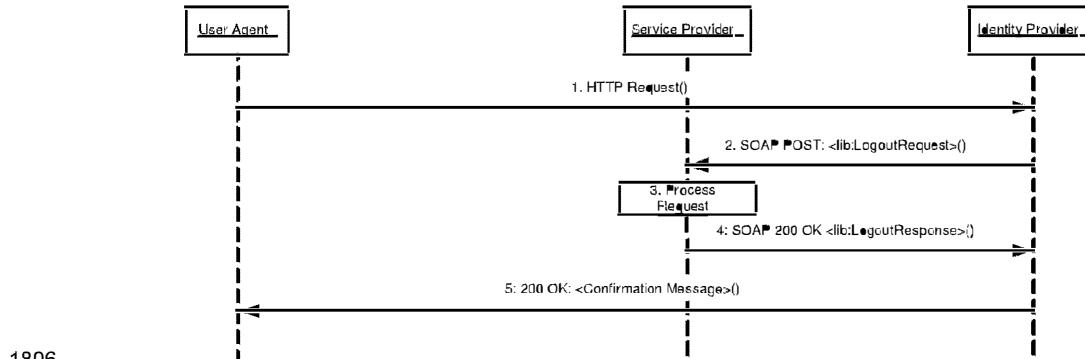
1797 3.5.1.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1798 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile uses SOAP over HTTP messaging to communicate a logout request to each service provider for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session if 1799 the service provider indicated a preference to receive logout request via the SOAP/HTTP-based profile. See Figure 14.

1800 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1801 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-idp-soap>

1802 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element SingleLogoutProtocolProfile when 1803 the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving logout requests via SOAP 1804 over HTTP.



1803 **Figure 14. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for single logout initiated at identity provider**

1804 **Note:**

1805 Steps 2 through 4 may be an iterative process for each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current session and has indicated a preference to receive logout requests via 1806 the SOAP/HTTP message profile.

1812 3.5.1.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service

1813 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the identity provider via an HTTP request.

1814 3.5.1.2.2. Step 2: Logout Request

1815 In step 2, the identity provider sends a SOAP over HTTP request to the SOAP endpoint of each service provider 1816 for which it provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session. The SOAP message MUST 1817 contain exactly one <lib:LogoutRequest> element in the SOAP body and adhere to the construction rules defined 1818 in [LibertyProtSchema].

1819 If a SOAP fault occurs, the identity provider SHOULD employ best efforts to resolve the fault condition and resend 1820 the single logout request to the service provider.

1821 3.5.1.2.3. Step 3: Processing the Logout Request

1822 In step 3, the service provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in 1823 [LibertyProtSchema].

1824 The service provider MUST invalidate the session for the Principal specified by the name identifier provided by the 1825 identity provider in the <lib:LogoutRequest>.

1826 3.5.1.2.4. Step 4: Responding to the Request

1827 In step 4, the service provider MUST respond to the <lib:LogoutRequest> with a SOAP 200 OK
1828 <lib:LogoutResponse> message.

1829 3.5.1.2.5. Step 5: Confirmation

1830 In step 5, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of single logout has completed.

1831 3.5.2. Single Logout Initiated at Service Provider

1832 The profiles in Section 3.5.2.1 and Section 3.5.2.2 are specific to the Principal⁷ initiation of the single logout request
1833 process at the service provider.

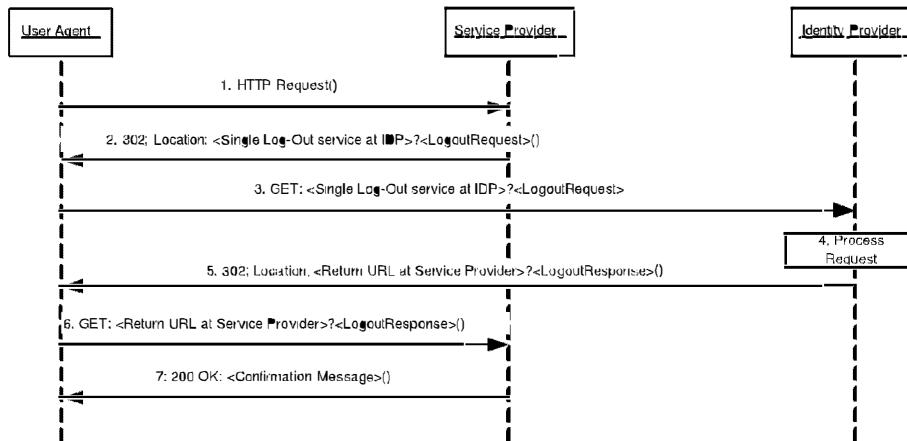
1834 3.5.2.1. HTTP-Based Profile

1835 The HTTP-based profile relies on using an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a logout request with the identity
1836 provider. The identity provider will then communicate a logout request to each service provider with which it has
1837 established a session for the Principal using the service provider's preferred profile for logout request from the identity
1838 provider (see Section 3.5.1). See Figure 15.

1839 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1840 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-sp-https>

1841 This URI identifier is intended for service provider consumption and is not needed in provider metadata.



1842

Figure 15. HTTP-redirect-based profile for single logout initiated at service provider

1844 Note:

1845 Step 4 may involve an iterative process by the identity provider to implement the preferred profile for logout
1846 requests for each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current
1847 session.

1848 3.5.2.1.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service at the Service Provider

1849 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the service provider indicating that session logout
1850 is desired at the associated identity provider and all service providers for which this identity provider has provided

1851 authentication assertions during the Principal's current session. If a current session exists for the Principal at the
1852 service provider, it is RECOMMENDED that the service provider terminate that session prior to step 2.

1853 **3.5.2.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Single Logout Service at the Identity Provider**

1854 In step 2, the service provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent to the single logout service
1855 URL at the identity provider.

1856 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1857 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the identity provider's single logout service URI..
- 1858 • The identity provider's single logout service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is
1859 specified, the service provider MUST NOT redirect to the identity provider.
- 1860 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the <lib:LogoutRequest>
1861 protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in 3.1.2.

1862 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1863 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1864 <other headers>
1865 Location : https://<Identity Provider single log-out service URL>?<query>
1866 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1867
1868
```

1869 where:

1870 <Identity Provider single log-out service URL>

1871 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the single logout service URL at the
1872 identity provider.

1873 <query>= ...<URL-encoded LogoutRequest>...

1874 The <query> MUST contain a single logout request.

1875 **3.5.2.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Identity Provider Single Logout Service**

1876 In step 3, the user agent accesses the identity provider's single logout service URL with the <lib:LogoutRequest>
1877 information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1878 **3.5.2.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Request**

1879 In step 4, the identity provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in
1880 [LibertyProtSchema].

1881 Each service provider for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's
1882 current session MUST be notified via the service provider's preferred profile for logout request from the identity
1883 provider (see Section 3.5.1).

1884 The identity provider's current session with the Principal MUST be terminated, and no more authentication assertions
1885 for the Principal are to be given to service providers.

1886 **3.5.2.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Service Provider Return URL**

1887 In step 5, the identity provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent back to service provider
 1888 using the return URL location obtained from the SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL metadata element. If the URL-
 1889 encoded <lib:LogoutRequest> message received in step 3 contains a parameter named RelayState, then the identity
 1890 provider MUST include a <query> component containing the same RelayState parameter and its value in its response
 1891 to the service provider.

1892 The purpose of this redirect is to return the user agent to the service provider.

1893 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

1894
 1895 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
 1896 <other headers>
 1897 Location : https://<Service Provider Return Service URL>?<query>
 1898 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
 1899

1900 where:

1901 <Service Provider Service Return URL>

1902 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the return URL location at the service
 1903 provider.

1904 <query>- ...<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>

1905 The <query> component MUST contain a single logout response. The <URL-encoded LogoutResponse> com-
 1906 ponent MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the URL-encoded logout
 1907 request message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in the step 3 message, then a RelayState
 1908 parameter MUST NOT be specified in the <URL-encoded LogoutResponse>.

1909 3.5.2.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Service Provider Return URL

1910 In step 6, the user agent accesses the service provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1911 3.5.2.1.7. Step 7: Confirmation

1912 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of a single logout has been
 1913 completed.

1914 3.5.2.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1915 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using SOAP over HTTP messages to communicate a logout request to
 1916 the identity provider. The identity provider will then communicate a logout request to each service provider it has
 1917 established a session with for the Principal via the service provider' preferred profile for logout requests from the
 1918 identity provider (see Section 3.5.1). See Figure 16.

1919 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1920 URI: http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-sp-soap

1921 This URI identifier is intended for service provider consumption and is not needed in provider metadata.

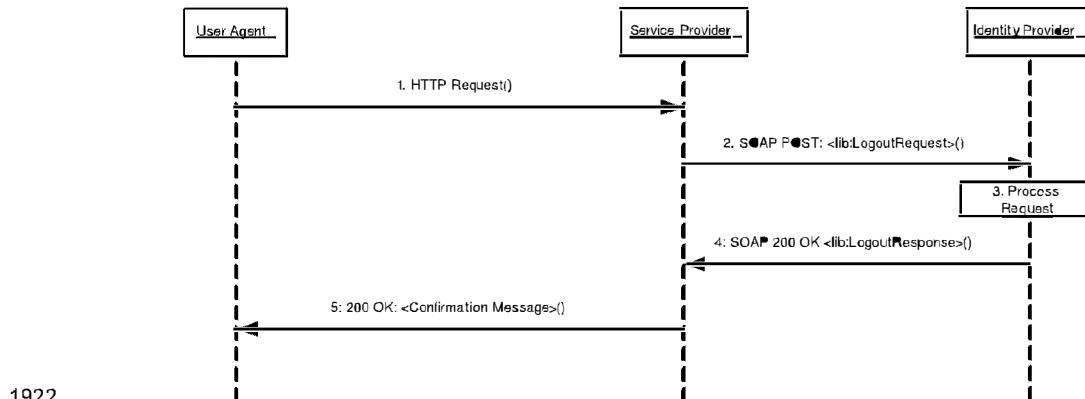


Figure 16. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for single logout initiated at service provider

1924 **Note:**

1925 Step 3 may involve an iterative process by the identity provider to implement the preferred profile for logout
1926 requests for each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current
1927 session.

1928 3.5.2.2.1. Step 1: Accessing Single Logout Service

1929 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the service provider via an HTTP request.

1930 3.5.2.2.2. Step 2: Logout Request

1931 In step 2, the service provider sends a SOAP over HTTP request to the identity provider's SOAP endpoint. The
1932 SOAP message MUST contain exactly one <lib:LogoutRequest> element in the SOAP body and adhere to the
1933 construction rules as defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1934 If a SOAP fault occurs, the service provider SHOULD employ best efforts to resolve the fault condition and resend
1935 the single logout request to the identity provider.

1936 3.5.2.2.3. Step 3: Processing the Logout Request

1937 In step 3, the identity provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in
1938 [LibertyProtSchema].

1939 Each service provider for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's
1940 current session MUST be requested to logout the Principal via the service provider's preferred profile for logout
1941 requests from the identity provider. If the identity provider determines that one or more of service providers to which
1942 it has provided assertions regarding this Principal do not support the SOAP profiles for the single logout, the identity
1943 provider MUST return a <lib:LogoutResponse> containing a status code of <lib:UnsupportedProfile>. The
1944 service provider MUST then re-submit its LogoutRequest via the HTTP profile described above.

1945 **Note:**

1946 If the identity provider is proxying authentication, based on authentication assertions from a second (proxied) identity
1947 provider (see Dynamic Proxying of Identity Providers in [LibertyProtSchema]), then the identity provider MUST
1948 follow these processing steps, *prior* to attempting to propagate the Single Logout request to service providers for
1949 which they have provided authentication assertions (as described above):

1950 1. If the identity provider determines that the proxied identity provider does not support the SOAP/HTTP profile of
 1951 Single Logout, it MUST respond to the requesting service provider with a <lib:LogoutResponse> containing
 1952 a status code of <lib:UnsupportedProfile>.

1953 2. If the identity provider is able to proceed with SOAP/HTTP-based Single Logout, then it MUST initiate the SP-
 1954 initiated SOAP/HTTP profile of Single Logout described in Section 3.5.2.2, *acting in the role of service provider*
 1955 toward the proxied identity provider. The proxied identity provider (in processing the SP-initiated SLO request)
 1956 may determine that some service provider for which it provided authentication assertions does not support the
 1957 SOAP/HTTP profile of Single Logout, and might thus return a <lib:UnsupportedProfile> status response.
 1958 If this situation occurs, the proxying identity provider MUST return a <lib:UnsupportedProfile> status
 1959 response to the requesting service provider.

1960 The identity provider's current session with the Principal MUST be terminated, and no more authentication assertions
 1961 for the Principal are to be given to service providers.

1962 **3.5.2.2.4. Step 4: Responding to the Logout Request**

1963 In step 4, the identity provider MUST respond to the <lib:LogoutRequest> with a SOAP 200 OK
 1964 <lib:LogoutResponse> message.

1965 **3.5.2.2.5. Step 5: Confirmation**

1966 In step 5, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of single logout was completed.

1967 **3.6. Identity Provider Introduction**

1968 This section defines the profiles by which a service provider discovers which identity providers a Principal is using.
 1969 In identity federation networks having more than one identity provider, service providers need a means to discover
 1970 which identity providers a Principal uses. The introduction profile relies on a cookie that is written in a domain that
 1971 is common between identity providers and service providers in an identity federation network. The domain that the
 1972 identity federation network predetermines for a deployment is known as the common domain in this specification, and
 1973 the cookie containing the list of identity providers is known as the common domain cookie.

1974 Implementation of this profile is OPTIONAL. Whether identity providers and service providers implement this profile
 1975 is a policy and deployment issue outside the scope of this specification. Also, which entities host web servers in the
 1976 common domain is a deployment issue and is outside the scope of this specification.

1977 **3.6.1. Common Domain Cookie**

1978 The name of the cookie MUST be _liberty_idp. The format of the cookie content MUST be a list of base64-encoded
 1979 (see [RFC2045]) identity provider succinct IDs separated by a single white space character. The identity provider IDs
 1980 MUST adhere to the creation rules as defined in Section 3.2.2.2. The identity provider ID is a metadata element, as
 1981 defined in [LibertyMetadata].

1982 The common domain cookie writing service SHOULD append the identity provider ID to the list. If the identity
 1983 provider ID is already present in the list, it MAY remove and append it when authentication of the Principal occurs.
 1984 The intent is that the most recently established identity provider session is the last one in the list.

1985 The cookie MUST be set with no Path prefix or a Path prefix of "/". The Domain MUST be set to ".[common-domain]"
 1986 where [common-domain] is the common domain established within the identity federation network for use with the
 1987 introduction protocol. The cookie MUST be marked as Secure.

1988 The cookie SHOULD be URL-encoded.

1989 Cookie syntax should be in accordance with [RFC2965] or [NetscapeCookie].

1990 The cookie MAY be either session or persistent. This choice may be made within an identity federation network, but
 1991 should apply uniformly to all providers in the network (see [LibertyImplGuide]) for more details on cookies).

1992 **3.6.2. Setting the Common Domain Cookie**

1993 After the identity provider authenticates a Principal, it MAY set the common domain cookie. The means by which
 1994 the identity provider sets the cookie are implementation-specific so long as the cookie is successfully set with the
 1995 parameters given above. One possible implementation strategy follows and should be considered non-normative. The
 1996 identity provider may:

- 1997 • Have previously established a DNS and IP alias for itself in the common domain
- 1998 • Redirect the user agent to itself using the DNS alias using a URL specifying "https" as the URL scheme. The
 1999 structure of the URL is private to the implementation and may include session information needed to identify the
 2000 user-agent.
- 2001 • Set the cookie on the redirected user agent using the parameters specified above.
- 2002 • Redirect the user agent back to itself, or, if appropriate, to the service provider.

2003 **3.6.3. Obtaining the Common Domain Cookie**

2004 When a service provider needs to discover which identity providers the Principal uses, it invokes a protocol exchange
 2005 designed to present the common domain cookie to the service provider after it is read by an HTTP server in the
 2006 common domain.

2007 If the HTTP server in the common domain is operated by the service provider, the service provider MAY redirect the
 2008 user agent to an identity provider's intersite transfer service for an optimized single sign-on process.

2009 The specific means by which the service provider reads the cookie are implementation-specific so long as it is able to
 2010 cause the user agent to present cookies that have been set with the parameters given in Section 3.6.1. One possible
 2011 implementation strategy is described as follows and should be considered non-normative. Additionally, it may be
 2012 sub-optimal for some applications.

- 2013 • Have previously established a DNS and IP alias for itself in the common domain
- 2014 • Redirect the user agent to itself using the DNS alias using a URL specifying "https" as the URL scheme. The
 2015 structure of the URL is private to the implementation and may include session information needed to identify the
 2016 user-agent.
- 2017 • Set the cookie on the redirected user agent using the parameters specified above
- 2018 • Redirect the user agent back to itself, or, if appropriate, to the service provider.

2019 3.7. NameIdentifier Mapping Profile

2020 The NameIdentifier mapping profile specifies how a service provider may obtain a NameIdentifier for a Principal it
 2021 has federated in the "namespace" of a different service provider, by querying an identity provider that has federated
 2022 the Principal with both service providers. This NameIdentifier may be used to obtain additional information about a
 2023 Principal from a SAML authority, or used for other non-specific purposes. In most cases, the encryption profile in the
 2024 following section will be used to obfuscate and time-limit this identifier to restrict its use.

2025 The NameIdentifier mapping profile makes use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

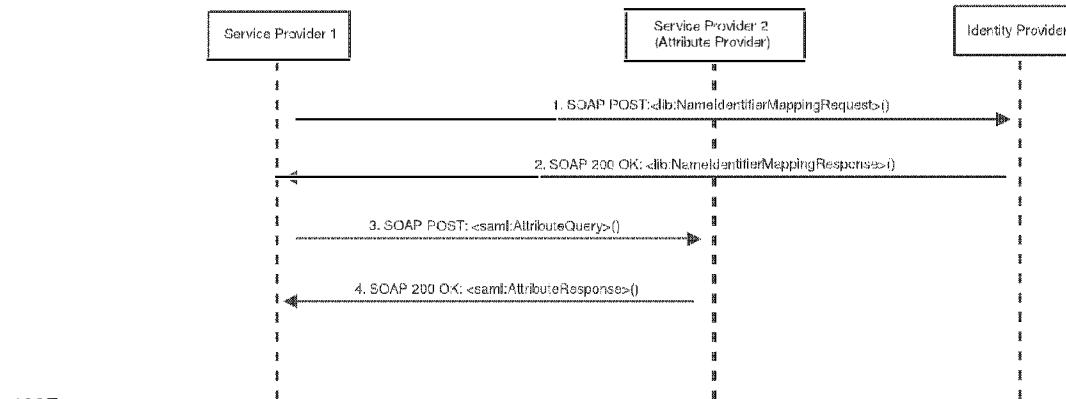
- 2026 • `NameIdentifierMappingProtocolProfile` - A URI indicating the profile of this protocol supported by the
 2027 identity provider.
- 2028 • `SOAPEndpoint` - The SOAP endpoint location at the identity provider to which Liberty SOAP messages are sent.

2029 3.7.1. SOAP-based NameIdentifier Mapping

2030 The SOAP-based profile relies on a SOAP request and response to query for and return the NameIdentifier. A
 2031 requesting service provider issues a SOAP request to an identity provider, requesting a different NameIdentifier for a
 2032 named Principal in the namespace of a service provider or affiliation group. This NameIdentifier may then be used
 2033 to query another Liberty provider offering SAML services for additional information about the named Principal. See
 2034 Figure 17.

2035 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

2036 URI: <http://prcjectliberty.org/profiles/nim-sp-htpp>



2037

2038 **Figure 17. SOAP-based profile for name identifier mapping**

2039 3.7.1.1. Step 1: Issuance and processing of Request

2040 In step 1, the service provider sends a SOAP over HTTP request to the SOAP endpoint of the identity provider it is
 2041 querying. The SOAP message MUST contain exactly one `<lib:NameIdentifierMappingRequest>` element in
 2042 the SOAP body and adhere to the construction rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

2043 The identity provider MUST process the `<lib:NameIdentifierMappingRequest>` according to the rules defined
 2044 in [LibertyProtSchema]. The identity provider is NOT required to honor the request for a mapped NameIdentifier, but
 2045 it MUST respond to the request with an appropriate status.

2046 **3.7.1.2. Step 2: Responding to the Request**

2047 In step 3, the identity provider MUST respond to the <lib:NameIdentifierMappingRequest> with a SOAP 200
 2048 OK <lib:NameIdentifierMappingResponse> message.

2049 **3.7.1.3. Step 3: Requesting SAML attributes using a mapped NameIdentifier**

2050 Note: This step is not normatively specified by Liberty, and is shown only for illustrative purposes. The requesting
 2051 service provider may use the mapped NameIdentifier of the Principal to issue a <saml:AttributeQuery>. This
 2052 MUST adhere to the rules specified in [SAMLCore11]

2053 **3.7.1.4. Step 4: Returning a <saml:AttributeStatement>**

2054 Note: This step is not normatively specified by Liberty, and is shown only for illustrative purposes. A service provider
 2055 receiving a <saml:AttributeQuery> may return a <saml:AttributeStatement>. This action MUST conform
 2056 to the rules specified in [SAMLCore11].

2057 **3.7.1.5. Security Considerations**

2058 In addition to the usual considerations relating to Liberty and SAML protocols (see [SAMLCore11]), an identity
 2059 provider SHOULD encrypt or otherwise obfuscate the NameIdentifier returned to the requesting service provider, so
 2060 that it is opaque to the requester. A way of accomplishing this is described in the next section.

2061 Because the identifier gives the receiving provider a persistent way of referencing the principal, it should only be
 2062 returned subject to the policies set by the principal or other authorized party.

2063 **3.8. NameIdentifier Encryption Profile**

2064 The Liberty NameIdentifier encryption profile allows a principal's NameIdentifier to be encrypted such that only
 2065 the identity or service provider possessing the decryption key can deduce the identity of the principal when the
 2066 NameIdentifier is included in a SAML or Liberty protocol message. The identifier is encrypted in such a fashion
 2067 that it is a different value when requested by different providers or multiple times, reducing the chance for correlation
 2068 of the encrypted value across multiple logical transactions.

2069 The NameIdentifier encryption profile make use of the following metadata element, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

- 2070 • KeyDescriptor - Defines a public key to use when wrapping the keys used in encrypting data for a provider (the
 2071 key-encrypting key)

2072 **3.8.1. XML Encryption-based NameIdentifier Encryption**

2073 The XML Encryption-based profile relies on the use of [xmlenc-core] to format and encode the resulting encrypted
2074 identifier and possibly the wrapped encryption key.

2075 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

2076 URI: urn:liberty:iff:nameid:encrypted

2077 **3.8.1.1. Step 1: Encrypting and encoding a NameIdentifier value.**

2078 The encrypting provider first transforms the original <saml:NameIdentifier> element into a
2079 <EncryptableNameIdentifier> element, which is an extension of the original element. The NameQualifier,
2080 IssueInstant, and Nonce attributes are set as defined by [LibertyProtSchema].

2081 If not already generated for the target provider, an encryption key is generated and is then itself encrypted with the
2082 key specified in the target provider's <KeyDescriptor> metadata element with a use attribute of encryption, or
2083 with a predefined key exchanged out of band. The wrapped encryption key is placed into a <xenc:EncryptedKey>
2084 element.

2085 If the symmetric encryption key is not included, because it has been exchanged out of band, and/or is being reused,
2086 then the encrypting provider MUST include additional information in the <xenc:EncryptedData> element that
2087 indicates to the target provider which decryption key to use in decrypting the identifier. This information MUST be
2088 sufficient to identify the key to use without the target knowing the encrypting provider's identity before decryption
2089 occurs.

2090 The encryption key is then applied to the <EncryptableNameIdentifier> element, producing an
2091 <xenc:EncryptedData> element with a Type of http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#Element.

2092 The resulting <xenc:EncryptedData> element, and optionally the <xenc:EncryptedKey> element, are then
2093 enclosed in an <EncryptedNameIdentifier> element. The element is base-64 encoded and the result is placed
2094 into a <saml:NameIdentifier> whose Format attribute MUST be urn:liberty:iff:nameid:encrypted.

2095 **3.8.1.2. Step 2: Decoding and decrypting a NameIdentifier value.**

2096 The decrypting provider first decodes the base-64 encoded data and recovers the <EncryptedNameIdentifier>
2097 element.

2098 The <xenc:EncryptedData> and optional <xenc:EncryptedKey> elements are then used to recover the symmet-
2099 ric encryption key and algorithm and decrypt the <EncryptableNameIdentifier> element.

2100 The provider can then examine the attributes to determine the identity federation to which the name identifier applies.

2101 **3.8.2. Security Considerations**

2102 The profile is designed to meet the needs of providers in addressing the security considerations of other profiles, such
2103 as the NameIdentifier Mapping Profile in the previous section. To insure the integrity of this profile, either symmetric
2104 encryption keys MUST NOT be reused, or if they are, then symmetric encryption keys MUST be reused between
2105 different principals federated with a given provider and MUST NOT be reused between different providers. It is
2106 RECOMMENDED that symmetric encryption keys, if reused, be renewed periodically. Furthermore, reuse of keys
2107 REQUIRES that a chaining mode with a unique initialization vector generated per encryption be used.

2108 **4. Security Considerations**

2109 **4.1. Introduction**

2110 This section describes security considerations associated with Liberty protocols for identity federation, single sign-on,
2111 federation termination, and single logout.

2112 Liberty protocols, schemas, bindings, and profiles inherit and use extensively the SAML protocols. Therefore, the
2113 security considerations published along with the SAML specification have direct relevance (see [SAMLCore11],
2114 [SAMLBind11], and [SAMLSec]). Throughout this section if, for any reason, a specific consideration or counter-
2115 measure does not apply or differs, notice of this fact is made; and a description of alternatives is supplied, where
2116 possible.

2117 **4.2. General Requirements**

2118 **4.2.1. Security of SSL and TLS**

2119 SSL and TLS utilize a suite of possible cipher suites. The security of the SSL or TLS session depends on the chosen
2120 cipher suite. An entity (that is, a user agent, service provider, or identity provider) that terminates an SSL or TLS
2121 connection needs to offer (or accept) suitable cipher suites during the handshake. The following list of TLS 1.0 cipher
2122 suites (or their SSL 3.0 equivalent) is recommended.

- 2123 • TLS_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA
- 2124 • TLS_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- 2125 • TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA

2126 The above list is not exhaustive. The recommended cipher suites are among the most commonly used. Note: New
2127 cipher suites are added as they are standardized and should be considered for inclusion if they have sufficiently strong
2128 security properties. For example, it is anticipated that the AES-based cipher suites being standardized in the IETF will
2129 be widely adopted and deployed.

2130 **4.2.2. Security Implementation**

2131 The suitable implementation of security protocols is necessary to maintain the security of a system, including

- 2132 • Secure random or pseudo-random number generation
- 2133 • Secure storage

2134 4.3. Classification of Threats

2135 4.3.1. Threat Model

2136 For an analysis of threat classifications, an Internet threat model has been used. In other words, the threat model
 2137 assumes that intermediary and end-systems participating in Liberty protocol exchanges have not been compromised.
 2138 However, where possible, the consequences and containment properties of a compromised system entity are described
 2139 and countermeasures are suggested to bolster the security posture so that the exposure from a security breach is
 2140 minimized.

2141 Given the nature of the Internet, the assumption is made that deployment is across the global Internet and, therefore,
 2142 crosses multiple administrative boundaries. Thus, an assumption is also made that the adversary has the capacity to
 2143 engage in both passive and active attacks (see Section 4.3.3).

2144 4.3.2. Rogue and Spurious Entities

2145 Attackers may be classified based on their capabilities and the roles that they play in launching attacks on a Liberty
 2146 system as follows:

2147 • **Rogue Entities:** Entities that misuse their privileges. The rogue actors may be Principals, user agents, service
 2148 providers, or identity providers. A rogue Principal is a legitimate participant who attempts to escalate its privileges
 2149 or masquerade as another system Principal. A rogue user agent may, for instance, misuse the relationships between
 2150 its associated Principals and an identity provider to launch certain attacks. Similarly, a rogue service provider may
 2151 be able to exploit the relationship that it has either with a Principal or with an identity provider to launch certain
 2152 attacks.

2153 • **Spurious Entities:** Entities that masquerade as a legitimate entity or are completely unknown to the system. The
 2154 spurious actors include Principals, user agents (i.e., user agents without associated legitimate Liberty Principals),
 2155 service providers, or identity providers. A spurious service provider may, for instance, pretend to be a service
 2156 provider that has a legitimate relationship with an identity provider. Similarly, a spurious Principal may be one
 2157 that pretends to be a legitimate Principal that has a relationship with either a service provider or an identity provider.

2158 4.3.3. Active and Passive Attackers

2159 Both rogue and spurious entities may launch active or passive attacks on the system. In a passive attack the attacker
 2160 does not inject traffic or modify traffic in any way. Such an attacker usually passively monitors the traffic flow, and the
 2161 information that is obtained in that flow may be used at a later time. An active attacker, on the other hand, is capable
 2162 of modifying existing traffic as well as injecting new traffic into the system.

2163 4.3.4. Scenarios

2164 The following scenarios describe possible attacks:

- 2165 • **Collusion:** The secret cooperation between two or more Liberty entities to launch an attack, for example,
 - 2166 • Collusion between Principal and service provider
 - 2167 • Collusion between Principal and identity provider
 - 2168 • Collusion between identity provider and service provider

- 2169 • Collusion among two or more Principals
- 2170 • Collusion between two or more service providers
- 2171 • Collusion between two or more identity providers

- 2172 • **Denial-of-Service Attacks:** The prevention of authorized access to a system resource or the delaying of system operations and functions.
- 2174 • **Man-in-the-Middle Attacks:** A form of active wiretapping attack in which the attacker intercepts and selectively modifies communicated data to masquerade as one or more of the entities involved in a communication association.
- 2177 • **Replay Attacks:** An attack in which a valid data transmission is maliciously or fraudulently repeated, either by the originator or by an adversary who intercepts the data and retransmits it, possibly as part of a masquerade attack.
- 2178 • **Session Hijacking:** A form of active wiretapping in which the attacker seizes control of a previously established communication association.

2180 4.4. Threat Scenarios and Countermeasures

2181 In this section, threats that may apply to all the Liberty profiles are considered first. Threats that are specific to
2182 individual profiles are then considered. In each discussion the threat is described as well as the countermeasures that
2183 exist in the profile or the additional countermeasures that may be implemented to mitigate the threat.

2184 4.4.1. Common Threats for All Profiles

2185 **Threat:** Request messages sent in cleartext

2186 **Description:** Most profile protocol exchanges do not mandate that all exchanges commence over a secure communica-
2187 tion channel. This lack of transport security potentially exposes requests and responses to both passive and active
2188 attacks.

2189 One obvious manifestation is when the initial contact is not over a secure transport and the Liberty profile begins to
2190 exchange messages by carrying the request message back to the user agent in the location header of a redirect.

2191 Another such manifestation could be a request or response message which carries a URI that may be resolved on a
2192 subsequent exchange, for instance lib:AuthnContextClassRef. If this URI were to specify a less or insecure transport,
2193 then the exchange may be vulnerable to the types of attacks described above.

2194 **Countermeasure:** Ensure that points of entry to Liberty protocol exchanges utilize the https URL <scheme> and that
2195 all interactions for that profile consistently exchange messages over https.

2196 **Threat:** Malicious redirects into identity or service provider targets

2197 **Description:** A spurious entity could issue a redirect to a user agent so that the user agent would access a resource
2198 that disrupts single sign-on. For example, an attacker could redirect the user agent to a logout resource of a service
2199 provider causing the Principal to be logged out of all existing authentication sessions.

2200 **Countermeasure:** Access to resources that produce side effects could be specified with a transient qualifier that must
2201 correspond to the current authentication session. Alternatively, a confirmation dialog could be interposed that relies
2202 on a transient qualifier with similar semantics.

2203 **Threat:** Relay state tampering or fabrication

2204 **Description:** Some of the messages may carry a <lib:RelayState> element, which is recommended to be integrity-
 2205 protected by the producer and optionally confidentiality-protected. If these practices are not followed, an adversary
 2206 could trigger unwanted side effects. In addition, by not confidentiality-protecting the value of this element, a legitimate
 2207 system entity could inadvertently expose information to the identity provider or a passive attacker.

2208 **Countermeasure:** Follow the recommended practice of confidentiality- and integrity-protecting the
 2209 <lib:RelayState> data. Note: Because the value of this element is both produced and consumed by the
 2210 same system entity, symmetric cryptographic primitives could be utilized.

2211 4.4.2. Single Sign-On and Federation

2212 4.4.2.1. Common Interactions for All Single Sign-On and Federation Profiles

2213 **Threat:** <lib:AuthnRequest> sent over insecure channel

2214 **Description:** It is recommended that the initial exchange to access the intersite transfer service be conducted over
 2215 a TLS-secured transport. Not following this recommendation can expose the exchange to both passive and active
 2216 attacks.

2217 **Countermeasure:** Deploy the intersite transfer service under an https scheme.

2218 **Threat:** Unsigned <lib:AuthnRequest> message

2219 **Description:** The signature element of an <lib:AuthnRequest> is optional and thus the absence of the signature
 2220 could pose a threat to the identity provider or even the targeted service provider. For example, a spurious system entity
 2221 could generate an unsigned <lib:AuthnRequest> and redirect the user agent to the identity provider. The identity
 2222 provider must then consume resources.

2223 **Countermeasure:** Sign the <lib:AuthnRequest>. The IDP can also verify the identity of the Principal in the
 2224 absence of a signed request.

2225 **Threat:** Replay of an authentication assertion

2226 **Description:** After obtaining a valid assertion from an identity provider, either legitimately or surreptitiously, the
 2227 entity replays the assertion to the Service at a later time. A digital signature must cover the entire assertion, thus
 2228 elements within the assertion cannot be corrupted without detection during the mandatory verification step. However,
 2229 it is possible to fabricate an <lib:AuthnResponse> with the valid assertion.

2230 **Countermeasure:** The issuer should sign <lib:AuthnResponse> messages. Signing binds the
 2231 <samlp:IssueInstant> of the response message to the assertion it contains. This binding accords the relying
 2232 party the opportunity to temporally judge the response. Additionally, a valid signature over the response
 2233 binds the <samlp:InResponseTo> element to the corresponding <lib:AuthnRequest>. (Specifying a short
 2234 period that the authentication assertion can be relied upon will minimize, but not mitigate this threat. Binding the
 2235 <lib:AssertionId> to the request <samlp:InResponseTo> element may also be handy.)

2236 **Threat:** Fabricated <lib:AuthnResponse> denial of service

2237 **Description:** An attacker captures the <samlp:RequestID> sent in an <lib:AuthnRequest> message by a service
 2238 provider to an identity provider, and sends several spurious <lib:AuthnResponse> messages to the service provider
 2239 with the same <samlp:InResponseTo>. Because the <samlp:InResponseTo> matches a <samlp:RequestID>
 2240 that the service provider had used, the service provider goes through the process of validating the signature in the
 2241 message. Thus, it is subject to a denial of service attack.

2242 **Countermeasure:** A secure communication channel should be established before transferring requests and responses.

2243 **Threat:** Collusion between two Principals

2244 **Description:** After getting an artifact or <lib:AuthnResponse> in step 6 (see Section 3.2.1), a legitimate Principal
 2245 A could pass this artifact or <lib:AuthnResponse> on to another Principal, B. Principal B is now able to use the
 2246 artifact or <lib:AuthnResponse>, while the actual authentication happened via Principal A.

2247 **Countermeasure:** Implementations where this threat is a concern MUST use the <saml:AuthenticationLocality>
 2248 in the authentication statement. The IP address that Principal B uses would be different from the IP address within the
 2249 <saml:AuthenticationLocality>. This countermeasure may not suffice when the user agent is behind a firewall
 2250 or proxy server. IP spoofing may also circumvent this countermeasure.

2251 **Threat:** Stolen artifact and subsequent Principal impersonation

2252 **Description:** See Section 4.1.1.9.1 in [SAMLBind11]

2253 **Countermeasure:** Identity providers MUST enforce a policy of one-time retrieval of the assertion corresponding to
 2254 an artifact so that a stolen artifact can be used only once. Implementations where this threat is a concern MUST use the
 2255 <saml:AuthenticationLocality> in the authentication statement. The IP address of a spurious user agent that at-
 2256 tempts to use the stolen artifact would be different from IP address within the <saml:AuthenticationLocality>.
 2257 The service provider may then be able to detect that the IP addresses differ. This countermeasure may not suffice when
 2258 the user agent is behind a firewall or proxy server. IP address spoofing may also circumvent this countermeasure.

2259 **Threat:** Stolen assertion and subsequent Principal impersonation

2260 **Description:** See Section 4.1.1.9.1 in [SAMLBind11]

2261 **Countermeasure:** Refer to the previous threat for requirements.

2262 **Threat:** Rogue service provider uses artifact or assertion to impersonate Principal at a different service provider

2263 **Description:** Because the <lib:AuthnResponse> contains the <lib:ProviderID>, this threat is not possible.

2264 **Countermeasure:** None

2265 **Threat:** Rogue identity provider impersonates Principal at a service provider

2266 **Description:** Because the Principal trusts the identity provider, it is assumed that the identity provider does not misuse
 2267 the Principal's trust.

2268 **Countermeasure:** None

2269 **Threat:** Identity provider modifies Principal during a session with a service provider

2270 **Description:** A service provider whose session has exceeded the <ReauthenticateOnOrAfter> time must contact
 2271 the Identity provider to get a new assertion. The new assertion might be for a different identity.

2272 **Countermeasure:** Service providers should continue to follow assertion processing rules to ensure that the subject of
 2273 any assertions received is actually the user for which the assertion is needed.

2274 **Threat:** Rogue user attempts to impersonate currently logged-in legitimate Principal and thereby gain access to
 2275 protected resources.

2276 **Description:** Once a Principal is successfully logged into an identity provider, subsequent <AuthnRequest>
 2277 messages from different service providers concerning that Principal will not necessarily cause the Principal to be
 2278 reauthenticated. Principals must, however, be authenticated unless the identity provider can determine that an
 2279 <AuthnRequest> is associated not only with the Principal's identity, but also with a validly authenticated identity
 2280 provider session for that Principal.

2281 **Countermeasure:** In implementations where this threat is a concern, identity providers MUST maintain state
 2282 information concerning active sessions, and MUST validate the correspondence between an <AuthnRequest> and

2283 an active session before issuing an <AuthnResponse> without first authenticating the Principal. Cookies posted by
 2284 identity providers MAY be used to support this validation process, though Liberty does not mandate a cookie-based
 2285 approach.

2286 **4.4.2.2. Liberty-Enabled Client and Proxy Profile**

2287 **Threat:** Intercepted <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope> and <lib:AuthnResponse> and subsequent Principal im-
 2288 personation.

2289 **Description:** A spurious system entity can interject itself as a man-in-the-middle (MITM) between the user agent
 2290 (LECP) and a legitimate service provider, where it acts in the service provider role in interactions with the
 2291 LECP, and in the user agent role in interactions with the legitimate service provider. In this way, as a first step,
 2292 the MITM is able to intercept the service provider's <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope> (step 3 of Section 3.2.4)
 2293 and substitute any URL of its choosing for the <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL> value before forward-
 2294 ing the <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope> on to the LECP. Typically, the MITM will insert a URL value that
 2295 points back to itself. Then, if the LECP subsequently receives a <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> from the
 2296 identity provider (step 6 in Section 3.2.4) and subsequently sends the contained <lib:AuthnResponse> to the
 2297 <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL> received from the MITM, the MITM will be able to masquerade as the
 2298 Principal at the legitimate service provider.

2299 **Countermeasure:** The identity provider specifies to the LECP the address to which the LECP
 2300 must send the <lib:AuthnResponse>. The <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL> in the
 2301 <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> element is for this purpose. This URL value is among the metadata that
 2302 identity and service providers must exchange in the process of establishing their operational relationship (see
 2303 Section 3.1 and Section 3.1.3).

2304 **4.4.2.3. Federation**

2305 **Threat:** Collusion among service providers can violate privacy of the Principal

2306 **Description:** When a group of service providers collude to share the <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> of a
 2307 Principal, they can track and in general compromise the privacy of the principal. More generally, this threat exists for
 2308 any common data (e.g. phone number) shared by rogue system entities.

2309 **Countermeasure:** The <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> is required to be unique for each identity provider to
 2310 service provider relationship. However, this requirement does not eliminate the threat when there are rogue participants
 2311 under the Principal's identity federation. The only protection is for Principals to be cautious when they choose service
 2312 providers and understand their privacy policies.

2313 **Threat:** Poorly generated name identifiers may compromise privacy

2314 **Description:** The federation protocol mandates that the <lib:NameIdentifier> elements be unique within a
 2315 Principal's federated identities. The name identifiers exchanged are pseudonyms and, to maintain the privacy of
 2316 the Principal, should be resistant to guessing or derivation attacks.

2317 **Countermeasure:** Name identifiers should be constructed using pseudo-random values that have no discernable
 2318 correspondence with the Principal's identifier (or name) used by the entity that generates the name identifier.

2319 **4.4.3. Name Registration**

2320 No known threats.

2321 **4.4.4. Federation Termination: HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile**

2322 **Threat:** Attacker can monitor and disrupt termination

2323 **Description:** During the initial steps, a passive attacker can collect the <lib: FederationTerminationNotification>
2324 information when it is issued in the redirect. This threat is possible because the first and second steps are not required
2325 to use https as the URL scheme. An active attacker may be able to intercept and modify the message conveyed in
2326 step 2 because the digital signature only covers a portion of the message. This initial exchange also exposes the name
2327 identifier. Exposing these data poses a privacy threat.

2328 **Countermeasure:** All exchanges should be conducted over a secure transport such as SSL or TLS.

2329 **4.4.5. Single Logout: HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile**

2330 **Threat:** Passive attacker can collect a Principal's name identifier

2331 **Description:** During the initial steps, a passive attacker can collect the <lib: LogoutRequest> information when it
2332 is issued in the redirect. Exposing these data poses a privacy threat.

2333 **Countermeasure:** All exchanges should be conducted over a secure transport such as SSL or TLS.

2334 **Threat:** Unsigned <lio:LogoutRequest> message

2335 **Description:** An Unsigned <lib:LogoutRequest> could be injected by a spurious system entity thus denying
2336 service to the Principal. Assuming that the NameIdentifier can be deduced or derived then it is conceivable that the
2337 user agent could be directed to deliver a fabricated <lio:LogoutRequest> message.

2338 **Countermeasure:** Sign the <lib:LogoutRequest> message. The identity provider can also verify the identity of a
2339 Principal in the absence of a signed request.

2340 **4.4.6. Identity Provider Introduction**

2341 No known threats.

2342 References

2343 Normative

- 2344 [HTMT4] Raggett, D., Le Hors, A., Jacobs, I., eds. (24 December 1999). "HTML 4.01 Specification," Recommendation, W3C <http://www.w3.org/TR/html401/> [August 2003].
- 2345
- 2346 [LibertyAuthnContext] Madsen, Paul, cds. "Liberty ID-FF Authentication Context Specification," Version 1.2-errata-
2347 v1.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- 2348 [LibertyGlossary] "Liberty Technical Glossary," Version 1.3-errata-v1.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 Aug 2004).
2349 <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Hodges, Jeff, eds.
- 2350 [LibertyMetadata] Davis, Peter, eds. "Liberty Metadata Description and Discovery Specification," Version 1.0-errata-
2351 v2.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- 2352 [LibertyProtSchema] Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification," Version
2353 1.2-errata-v2.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- 2354 [SAMLBind11] Maler, Eve, Mishra, Prateek, Philpott, Rob, eds. (27 May 2003). "Bindings and Profiles
2355 for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V1.1," OASIS Committee Specification,
2356 version 1.1, Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/documents.php?wg_abbrev=security
- 2357
- 2358 [SAMLCore11] Maler, Eve, Mishra, Prateek, Philpott, Rob, eds. (27 May 2003). "Assertions and Protocol
2359 for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V1.1," OASIS Committee Specification,
2360 version 1.1, Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/documents.php?wg_abbrev=security
- 2361
- 2362 [SAMLSec] McLaren, C., eds. (05 November 2002). "Security Considerations for the OASIS Security Assertion
2363 Markup Language (SAML)," Version 1.0, OASIS Standard, Organization for the Advancement of Structured
2364 Information Standards <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/security/#documents>
- 2365 [Schema1] Thompson, Henry S., Beech, David, Maloney, Murray, Mendelsohn, Noah, eds. (May
2366 2002). "XML Schema Part 1: Structures," Recommendation, World Wide Web Consortium
2367 <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/>
- 2368 [SOAPv1.1] "Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1," Box, Don, Ehnebuske, David, Kakivaya, Gopal, Layman,
2369 Andrew, Mendelsohn, Noah, Nielsen, Henrik Frystyk, Winer, Dave, eds. World Wide Web Consortium W3C
2370 Note (08 May 2000). <http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/NOTE-SOAP-20000508/>
- 2371 [SSI.] Frier, A., Carlton, P., Kocher, P., eds. (November 1996). Netscape Communications Corporation "The SSL 3.0
2372 Protocol," <http://www.netscape.com/eng/ssl3/>
- 2373 [RFC1750] Eastlake , D., Crocker, S., Schiller, J., eds. (December 1994). "Randomness Recommendations for
2374 Security," RFC 1750, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1750.txt> [August 2003].
- 2375 [RFC1945] Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., Frystyk, H., eds. (May 1996). "Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.0 ,"
2376 RFC 1945, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1945.txt> [August 2003].
- 2377 [RFC2045] Freed, N., Borenstein, N., eds. (November 1996). "Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions
2378 (MIME) Part One: Format of Internet Message Bodies ,," RFC 2045., Internet Engineering Task
2379 Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2045.txt> [November 1996].
- 2380 [RFC2965] Kristol, D., Montulli, L., eds. (October 2000). "HTTP State Management Mechanism," RFC 2965.,
2381 Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2965.txt> [October 2000].

Liberty Alliance Project:
Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification

Version: 1.2-errata-v2.0

2382 [RFC2119] Bradner, S., eds. "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels," RFC 2119, The Internet
2383 Engineering Task Force (March 1997). <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt> [March 1997].

2384 [RFC2246] Dierks, T., Allen, C., eds. (January 1999). "The TLS Protocol," Version 1.0 RFC 2246, Internet
2385 Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2246.txt> [January 1999].

2386 [RFC2396] Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., Masinter, L., eds. (August 1998). "Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI):
2387 Generic Syntax," RFC 2396, The Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2396.txt>
2388 [August 1998].

2389 [RFC2616] Fielding, R., Gettys, J., Mogul, J., Frystyk, H., Masinter, L., Leach, P., Berners-Lee, T., eds. (June
2390 1999). "Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.1," RFC 2616, The Internet Engineering Task Force
2391 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2616.txt> [June 1999].

2392 [RFC2617] Franks, J., Hallam-Baker, P., Hostetler, J., Lawrence, S., Leach, P., Stewart, L., eds. (June 1999). "HTTP
2393 Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication," RFC 2617, The Internet Engineering Task Force
2394 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2617.txt> [June 1999].

2395 [RFC3106] Eastlake, D., Goldstein, T., eds. (April 2001). "ECML v1.1: Field Specifications for E-Commerce," RFC
2396 3106, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3106.txt> [April 2001].

2397 [WML] "Wireless Markup Language Version 1.3 Specification," Version 1.3, Open Mobile Alliance
2398 <http://www.openmobilealliance.org/tech/affiliates/wap/wapindex.html>

2399 [xmlenc-core] Eastlake, Donald, Reagle, Joseph, eds. (December 2002). "XML Encryption Syntax and Processing,"
2400 W3C Recommendation, World Wide Web Consortium <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlenc-core/>

2401 **Informative**

2402 [LibertyImplGuide] "Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines," Version 1.2, Liberty Alliance Project (18 April
2403 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Thompson, Peter, Champagne, Darryl, eds.

2404 [NetscapeCookie] eds. "Persistent Client State HTTP Cookies," Netscape http://wp.netscape.com/newsref/std/cookie_spec.html
2405

EXHIBIT 5



Privacy and Security Best Practices

Version 2.0

November 12, 2003

Editor:

Christine Varney, Hogan & Hartson

Contributors:

Piper Cole, Sun Microsystems
William Duserick, Fidelity
Jill Lesser, AOL
Gary Podorowsky, Sony
Paule Sibeta, France Telecom
Charlotte Thornby, Sun Microsystems

Abstract:

Privacy and security are key concerns in the implementation of Liberty Alliance specifications. As such, the Liberty Alliance has and will continue to provide tools and guidance to implementing companies that enable them to build more secure, privacy-friendly identity-based services that can comply with local regulations and create a more trusted relationship with customers and partners. The following document highlights certain national privacy laws, fair information practices and implementation guidance for organizations using the Liberty Alliance specifications.

Contents

1. Executive Summary	2
2. Introduction.....	3
3. Liberty Alliance Perspective on Privacy	4
4. Privacy laws.....	5
5. Fair Information Principles	6
6. Liberty Alliance Privacy Recommendations.....	8
7. Security	20
8. Internet Security Vulnerabilities and Precautions.....	23
8.1. Common Weaknesses.....	24
8.2. Browser Vulnerabilities.....	25
8.3. Protocol Vulnerabilities.....	26
8.4. Summary.....	28
9. Terminology.....	28
10. References.....	30

1. Executive Summary

2 The Liberty Alliance Project is a consortium of more than 150 organizations worldwide working together to create
 3 open, technical specifications for federated network identity. These specifications, which are available for any
 4 organization to download and incorporate into products and services, provide:

- 5 • Simplified sign-on capabilities using a federated network identity architecture that supports all current and
 6 emerging network access devices.
- 7 • Permissions-based attribute sharing to enable organizations to provide users with choice and control over
 8 the use and disclosure of their personal information.
- 9 • A commonly accepted platform and mechanism for building and managing identity-based web services
 10 based on open industry standards.

11 Because companies will implement Liberty's specifications in connection with their web-based offerings, privacy and
 12 security are key concerns. As such, Liberty has and will continue to provide tools and guidance to implementing
 13 companies to lead them to build more secure, privacy-friendly identity-based services that can be in compliance with
 14 local regulations and create a more trusted relationship with customers and partners.

15 The Liberty specifications will enable companies to adhere to information practices that comply with national privacy
 16 laws and regulations, or in the absence of such laws, industry best practices. It is however, important to note that
 17 Liberty, as a standards body, will not manage companies' compliance with those laws.

18 The following document highlights certain national privacy laws, fair information practices and implementation
 19 guidance for organizations using the Liberty Alliance specifications. Below is a brief summary of key points made in
 20 the paper, but the Alliance would encourage all parties to read through the entire document.

21 Liberty's Perspective on Privacy:

- 22 • The Liberty Alliance considers privacy and security of a Principal's personal information to be extremely
 23 important. This philosophy has driven many decisions crucial in the specification development process.
- 24 • Because the Liberty specifications represent a novel approach to account linking and data exchange, we
 25 believe it is important to identify implementation best practices to accompany the specifications.
- 26 • The Alliance also recommends that companies implementing any identity-related services or applications
 27 consult with local counsel to ensure that the services they provide comply with applicable privacy laws and
 28 regulations.

29 Privacy Laws and Fair Information Practices:

- 30 • There are several privacy laws, in varying states of development, enacted worldwide. This document
 31 highlights some of the more pertinent regulations in the U.S., Canada, Europe and other regions.
- 32 • This paper also describes certain practices and frameworks created by various organizations that address
 33 the use and disclosure of personal information. Topics addressed include adoption and implementation of
 34 privacy policies, notice and disclosure, choice and consent, data quality, security safeguards and
 35 accountability.

36 Liberty Alliance Privacy Recommendations:

- 37 • In addition to current laws and organizational guidelines, the Liberty Alliance offers in this paper a
 38 baseline set of fair information practices for any entity using the Liberty specifications.
- 39 • Liberty-enabled providers can function in multiple roles within an identity management relationship.
 40 These roles come with certain responsibilities – whether their role is Principal, Service Provider, Identity

41 Provider, Attribute Provider or Discovery Service. This paper reviews these roles and responsibilities in
 42 the context of privacy and security.

43 **Security, Internet Protocols and Browsers:**

44 • In developing its specifications, Liberty has evaluated the weaknesses of several well-known and
 45 frequently used Internet protocols and browsers. The Liberty Alliance has made every effort to provide
 46 secure standards, but since the standards are built on top of insecure protocols, there are some unavoidable
 47 potential vulnerabilities. This should not be misconstrued to suggest that the Liberty Specifications are
 48 insecure, but that implementations are dependent on all the underlying protocols, and thus care must be
 49 taken in implementation. The Liberty specifications neither increase nor eliminate these vulnerabilities.
 50 • To that end, this best practices document provides definitions and information about security
 51 vulnerabilities and offers mitigating information to avoid the most common of them.

52 **2. Introduction**

53 The Liberty Alliance Project (“**Liberty Alliance**” or “**Liberty**”) is an unincorporated, contract-based group of more
 54 than 150 companies and organizations from around the world. Liberty’s objective is to create open, technical
 55 specifications (“**Liberty Specifications**”) that (i) enable simplified sign-on through federated network identification
 56 on all current and emerging network access devices, and (ii) support and promote permissions-based attribute sharing
 57 to enable a user’s (“**Principal’s**”) choice and control over the use and disclosure of such Principal’s personal
 58 information. Liberty anticipates that these specifications will expedite the growth of e-commerce because they are
 59 designed to increase consumer convenience and confidence and to provide businesses with new business and cost-
 60 saving opportunities.

61 Liberty envisions that organizations will implement the Liberty Specifications in connection with their web-based
 62 offerings. Because privacy is important in these contexts, the Liberty Specifications include the necessary features and
 63 facilities to enable an implementing company to comply with its national privacy laws and regulations, or in the
 64 absence of law or regulation, best practices. Thus the Liberty Specifications will enable companies to adhere to
 65 information practices that comply with those laws and regulations.

66 The Liberty Alliance offers the guidance set forth in this document to implement the Liberty Specifications in an
 67 appropriately secure and privacy-friendly manner. Liberty also provides guidelines regarding privacy and security in a
 68 variety of documents, and intends to provide such guidance for future versions of the Liberty Specifications as well.¹

69 This document first presents Liberty’s perspective on privacy, followed by a discussion of certain general privacy laws
 70 and fair information practices. It then highlights certain “best practices” that will help those using the Liberty
 71 Specifications to ensure that privacy concerns are addressed. We offer some observations on security issues generally
 72 and Internet protocols and browsers more specifically. Finally, also attached for easy reference are links to books,
 73 papers, and other materials that discuss online security and privacy issues, as well as a broad sample of the variety of
 74 contemporary privacy paradigms that exist.

75 Companies that implement the Liberty Specifications are advised to consult with local counsel to ensure that the
 76 services they provide, based upon the Liberty Specifications, comply with applicable law. Please note that these best
 77 practices are intended to provide guidelines, not serve as an exhaustive resource. Furthermore, from a technical
 78 standpoint, these best practices are non-normative – they are not the rules defining the Liberty Specifications, but
 79 rather identify the privacy and security concerns that should be addressed when implementing Liberty Specifications.
 80 It is important to note that the Liberty Specifications are based upon existing Internet architecture and well-known
 81 protocols. The Liberty Specifications cannot and do not cure the well documented security challenges inherent in the

¹ Further guidelines on privacy and security can be found in the following Liberty specification documents: Liberty Alliance, “Liberty Security Bulletin October 11, 2002;” Thomas Wason, “Architectural Overview Version 1.0-2.0;” Paul Madsen, “Liberty Authentication Context Specification;” Gary Ellison, “ID-WSF Security Mechanisms;” Susan Landau, “ID-WSF Security and Privacy Overview;” John Kemp and Tom Wason, “ID-FF Bindings and Profiles;” Scott Cantor and John Kemp, “Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification;” and John Linn, “Liberty Trust Models.”

82 architecture of the Internet. Because companies from any part of the world, whether for-profit or not-for-profit,
 83 whether or not a member of the Liberty Alliance, may use the Liberty Specifications, the best practices identified in
 84 this document cannot and do not capture or address each potentially applicable legal privacy regime. Companies that
 85 implement the Liberty Specifications are advised to consult with local counsel to ensure that the services they provide,
 86 based upon the Liberty Specifications, comply with applicable privacy laws and regulations.

87 In addition, readers of this document should be aware that the Liberty Specifications are just that – specifications only.
 88 Given the global nature of e-commerce, the myriad of laws that apply to privacy, and the fact that the Liberty Alliance
 89 itself does not provide any services, the Liberty Alliance cannot and does not (i) advise as to what laws, regulations, or
 90 fair information practices are applicable to any given company, (ii) condition use of the Liberty Specifications on
 91 adoption of a particular set of fair information practices, (iii) monitor, audit or enforce compliance with applicable
 92 laws and regulations, nor (iv) have any liability with respect to an implementing company's use of the Liberty
 93 Specifications. The implementing companies remain responsible for monitoring implementation and, as is the case
 94 today, remain answerable to local enforcement authorities for non-compliance with applicable laws.

95 Similarly, implementing companies should monitor the ever-changing status of security challenges, and should take
 96 these into account when designing their implementations. To aid in this effort, we present in this document some of
 97 the well-known Internet and protocol security vulnerabilities that should be taken into account when implementing the
 98 Liberty Specifications.

99 3. Liberty Alliance Perspective on Privacy

100 The Liberty Alliance considers privacy and security of a Principal's personal information to be extremely important.
 101 Privacy, security and consumer considerations drive many decisions the Liberty Alliance made about the world of
 102 online commerce that the Liberty Specifications enable. In particular, the Liberty Alliance made the following
 103 fundamental decisions regarding the Liberty Specifications:

- 104 • To use a de-centralized architecture, where it is not necessary to have data stored with a single entity;
- 105 • To use a federated architecture, where parties are free to link networks as business judgment dictates;
- 106 • To support and promote permissions-based attribute sharing to enable consumer choice and control over
 107 the use and disclosure of his or her personal information;
- 108 • To provide open specifications that are not centrally administered;
- 109 • To provide interoperable specifications that can be used on a wide variety of network access devices;
- 110 • To leverage existing systems, standards, and protocols where they work well;
- 111 • To enable companies to transmit information using the specifications with the best available security;
- 112 • To include in the specifications, tools that enable companies to respond to consumer interests regarding
 113 privacy and security and to compete on that basis.

114 Our perspective on privacy is necessarily informed by two key characteristics of our work:

- 115 1. The Liberty Alliance is a group of individual companies writing open technical specifications and, except
 116 for the specifications, the Liberty Alliance does not provide products or services directly to the public;
 117 and
- 118 2. The Liberty Alliance is composed of individual member companies from around the globe and from
 119 myriad sectors of the economy. Many of the Liberty Alliance members serve consumers directly and
 120 others create the infrastructure products that are used by companies to serve consumers directly and by
 121 companies to run their internal operations. Some companies serve global markets, and others serve
 122 regional markets in Europe, Japan, Korea, and the United States.

123 Given the goals of facilitating e-commerce and providing a mechanism that permits compliance with local law and
 124 appropriate security, Liberty believes that the responsible approach is to create flexible, interoperable specifications
 125 that can be implemented around the globe in a variety of different ways to satisfy applicable privacy and security
 126 concerns and related laws. Thus, the Liberty Specifications provide tools that can be used by implementing companies
 127 to address privacy and security concerns. As noted earlier, the implementing companies are solely responsible for

128 deploying the Liberty Specifications in a secure manner that complies with applicable privacy laws and fair
129 information practices.

130 Because the Liberty Specifications represent a novel approach to account linking and data exchange, we believe it is
131 important to identify implementation best practices to accompany the specifications. The best practices below simply
132 explain what fair information principles Liberty-enabled providers should address, depending upon which role(s) they
133 perform. This document also explains the tools contained in the specifications that can be used to respond to such
134 considerations, including elements of the Liberty Specifications that enable implementers to more effectively utilize
135 various rights expression languages to communicate information about usage directives that may be associated with a
136 given attribute.

137 Finally, it is important to note that the Liberty Specifications are built on a framework that presumes data exchange of
138 personal attributes will occur in the context of permissioning. While, as noted, the Liberty Alliance has no role in
139 providing services, many of the architectural decisions made in creating the Liberty Specifications were made on the
140 presumption that those providing services based on the Liberty Specifications would be engaging in permissions-based
141 attribute sharing.

142 These architectural considerations, as well as specific features of the Liberty Specifications reflect the fact that the
143 Liberty Alliance is both very conscious of the importance of privacy, security and other public policy considerations,
144 and cognizant of the fact that the Liberty Alliance is, fundamentally, an open specifications body that cannot – and
145 should not – enforce particular implementations on parties using the Liberty Specifications.

146 4. Privacy laws

147 There are a variety of privacy protection laws throughout the world, each with its unique set of requirements and
148 obligations. The following discussion highlights some, but by no means all, of these laws, and the differences between
149 those highlighted.²

150 Some of the privacy laws that have been enacted include, among others:

- 151 • European Union Directive on Data Protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data
152 and the free movement of such data.³
- 153 • European Union Directive concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the
154 electronic communications sector.⁴
- 155 • In Canada – The Personal Information Protection and Electronic Documents Act.⁵
- 156 • In the United States – The Children's Online Privacy Protection Act, The Graham-Leach-Bliley Act, The
157 Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act, and more generally, the Federal Trade Commission
158 has challenged online privacy policies under Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act.⁶
- 159 • In Other Territories – According to Privacy International's Privacy and Human Rights: An International
160 Survey of Privacy Laws and Developments, 2003, there are several other territories that have enacted or
161 enforced some form of privacy laws.⁷

162 The EU Data Protection Directive (95/46/EC) aims to protect the privacy of EU citizens and harmonize differing laws
163 and regulations in the Member States. The EU Data Protection Directive covers any information relating to an

² The summaries of law provided below are for informational purposes only, and are not intended to be legal advice.

³ EU Data Protection Directive 95/46/EC.

⁴ EU Directive on Privacy and Electronic Communications 2002/58/EC.

⁵ Canadian Privacy Act. S.C. 2000.

⁶ See 15 U.S.C.A. § 6501 (2000); 15 U.S.C.A. § 6801 et. seq. (1999); 42 U.S.C.A. §§ 1320(d) et. seq. (1996); 15 U.S.C.A. § 45(a) (2000).

⁷ Privacy International, "Privacy and Human Rights: An International Survey of Privacy Laws and Developments, 2002."

164 individual, even if collected purely in a business context, such as contact details of business clients, and not just
 165 consumers. Data about a company's employees is also covered.

166 The Directive imposes duties on data "controllers," those who determine the purpose and means of processing data. In
 167 addition to imposing registration requirements with data commissioners in Member States, the Directive requires that
 168 data be (i) processed fairly, (ii) collected for specified, explicit and legitimate purposes and not used in ways
 169 incompatible with those purposes, (iii) collected only to the extent that it is adequate and relevant, and not excessive in
 170 relation to the purposes for which it was collected, (iv) accurate and kept up to date, (v) kept no longer than necessary
 171 for the purposes for which it was collected, and (vi) not transferred to third-party countries that do not ensure an
 172 adequate level of protection for the data. Data may generally be processed either by unambiguous consent or where
 173 necessary to perform a contract. However, certain data is considered sensitive requiring explicit consent before
 174 processing. In addition, data subjects are to be given notice of the data controller, purposes of processing their data,
 175 recipients of the data, and the right to access and correct the data. This notice to the data subject is to be provided even
 176 when the data has been obtained not from the data subject but from a third party.

177 The EU Data Protection Directive for electronic communications (2002/58/EC) complements the aforementioned
 178 Directive for the electronic communications sector. It includes *inter alia* specific provisions regarding the
 179 confidentiality of communications, the handling of traffic and location data and the requirements and restrictions
 180 applying to the use of cookies as well as to unsolicited electronic communications. Member States are required to
 181 implement the Directive by 31 October 2003.

182 The Canadian Privacy Act sets out ground rules for how private sector organizations may collect, use or disclose
 183 personal information in the course of commercial activities. The Act is centered around ten (10) underlying principles
 184 regarding (i) accountability, (ii) identifying purpose, (iii) consent, (iv) limiting collection, (v) limiting use, disclosure,
 185 and retention, (vi) accuracy, (vii) safeguards, (viii) openness, (ix) individual access, and (x) challenging compliance.

186 United States laws, on the other hand, take a more vertical approach with express federal privacy related statutes for
 187 specific sectors. For example, the Graham-Leach Bliley-Act ("GLB Act") governs the use of personal information
 188 that is given to and managed by financial service providers. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act
 189 ("HIPAA") mandates standards for the use of protected health care data. The Children's Online Privacy Protection
 190 Act ("COPPA") governs the use and collection of personal information about children under age 13. Each of these
 191 laws requires some form of notice and consent before disclosure of the personal information at issue, and requires that
 192 a party use reasonable safeguards to maintain the confidentiality of such personal information. Under the GLB Act,
 193 for example, consent to share personal information with unaffiliated third parties for marketing purposes via an "opt-
 194 out" procedure rather than express or an "opt-in" consent, may be acceptable. In other cases, the Federal Trade
 195 Commission has exercised its authority under Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act to challenge certain
 196 privacy practices as "unfair and deceptive."⁸

197 Given the breadth and variety of privacy laws that may be applicable depending upon the jurisdiction in which a
 198 company does business, the Liberty Alliance strongly recommends that any entity implementing the Liberty
 199 Specifications consult with local counsel to determine which laws are applicable to the company's business and how
 200 best to comply with those laws.

201 5. Fair Information Principles

202 **General.** In addition to existing privacy laws, several organizations have set forth fair information practices governing
 203 the use and disclosure of personal information. These organizations include, among others, the Online Privacy
 204 Alliance ("OPA"), the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development ("OECD"), the Center for
 205 Democracy and Technology ("CDT"), the Network Advertising Initiative ("NAI"), Health Internet Ethics ("Hi-
 206 Ethics"), and the Global Business Dialogue on Electronic Commerce ("GBDe").⁹

⁸ For an overview of U.S. federal and state privacy laws, see BBB Online, Inc. and the Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc., "A Review of Federal and State Privacy Laws."

⁹ Links to several of these fair information practices or privacy guidelines are noted in the References section of this document.

207 There are no universal standards among these organizations as to what fair information practices entail. The
 208 differences seen in these fair information practices are partially attributable to geography, and partially attributable to
 209 the sector to which the fair information practices apply.

210 ***OPA Guidelines.*** OPA is a U.S.-based organization which provides a general framework in which any U.S. company
 211 can operate, calling for customization and enhancement as appropriate to a company's business or industry sector.
 212 These guidelines generally provide as follows:

- 213 • ***Adoption and Implementation of a Privacy Policy*** – An organization should adopt and implement a policy
 214 for protecting the privacy of individually identifiable information.
- 215 • ***Notice and Disclosure*** – The privacy policy should be clear, easy to find, and available at or prior to the
 216 time individually identifiable information is collected. It should state “what information is being collected;
 217 the use of that information; possible third-party distribution of that information; the choices available to an
 218 individual regarding collection, use and distribution of the collected information; a statement of the
 219 organization’s commitment to data security; and what steps the organization takes to ensure data quality
 220 and access. It should also disclose the consequences, if any, of an individual’s refusal to provide
 221 information. The policy should also include a clear statement of what accountability mechanism the
 222 organization uses, including how to contact the organization.”
- 223 • ***Choice/Consent*** – Individuals must be given the opportunity to exercise choice regarding how individually
 224 identifiable information collected from them online may be used when such use is unrelated to the purpose
 225 for which the information was collected or where there is third-party distribution of such data unrelated to
 226 the purpose for which it is collected. At a minimum, individuals should be given the opportunity to opt out
 227 of such use or third-party distribution.
- 228 • ***Data Security*** – Organizations creating, maintaining, using or disseminating individually identifiable
 229 information should take appropriate measures to assure its reliability and should take reasonable
 230 precautions to protect it from loss, misuse or alteration. Organizations should take reasonable steps to
 231 assure that third parties to which they transfer such information are aware of these security practices, and
 232 that the third parties also take reasonable precautions to protect any transferred information.
- 233 • ***Data Quality and Access*** – Organizations creating, maintaining, using or disseminating individually
 234 identifiable information should take reasonable steps to assure that the data are accurate, complete and
 235 timely for the purposes for which they are to be used. Organizations should establish appropriate
 236 processes or mechanisms so that inaccuracies in material individually identifiable information, such as
 237 account or contact information, may be corrected. These processes and mechanisms should be simple and
 238 easy to use, and provide assurance that inaccuracies have been corrected. Other procedures to assure data
 239 quality may include use of reliable sources and collection methods, reasonable and appropriate consumer
 240 access and correction, and protections against accidental or unauthorized alteration.

241 ***OECD Guidelines.*** The OECD is an international organization focusing on global economic cooperation and
 242 development. OECD guidelines on the protection of privacy and trans-border flows of personal data are close to the
 243 European approach to privacy. Unlike the United States, Europe has more comprehensive privacy statutes and vests
 244 significant authority in its regulatory bodies to enforce privacy legislation. OECD's guidelines set forth the following
 245 eight principles:

- 246 • ***Collection Limitation*** – There should be limits to the collection of personal data and any such data should
 247 be obtained by lawful and fair means and, where appropriate, with the knowledge or consent of the data
 248 subject.
- 249 • ***Data Quality*** – Personal data should be relevant to the purposes for which they are to be used, and, to the
 250 extent necessary for those purposes, should be accurate, complete and kept up-to-date.
- 251 • ***Purpose Specification*** – The purposes for which personal data are collected should be specified not later
 252 than at the time of data collection and the subsequent use limited to the fulfillment of those purposes or
 253 such others as are not incompatible with those purposes and as are specified on each occasion of change of
 254 purpose.
- 255 • ***Use Limitation*** – Personal data should not be disclosed, made available or otherwise used for purposes
 256 other than those specified in accordance with Article 9 (the purpose specification principle) except: (a)
 257 with the consent of the data subject; or (b) by the authority of law.

- 258 • **Security Safeguards** – Personal data should be protected by reasonable security safeguards against such
259 risks as loss or unauthorized access, destruction, use, modification or disclosure of data.
- 260 • **Openness** – There should be a general policy of openness about developments, practices and policies with
261 respect to personal data. Means should be readily available of establishing the existence and nature of
262 personal data, and the main purposes of their use, as well as the identity and usual residence of the data
263 controller.
- 264 • **Individual Participation** – An individual should have the right: (a) to obtain from a data controller, or
265 otherwise, confirmation of whether or not the data controller has data relating to him; (b) to have
266 communicated to him, data relating to him within a reasonable time; at a charge, if any, that is not
267 excessive; in a reasonable manner; and in a form that is readily intelligible to him; (c) to be given reasons
268 if a request made under subparagraphs (a) and (b) is denied, and to be able to challenge such denial; and
269 (d) to challenge data relating to him and, if the challenge is successful, to have the data erased, rectified,
270 completed or amended.
- 271 • **Accountability** – A data controller should be accountable for complying with measures which give effect
272 to the principles stated above.

273 6. Liberty Alliance Privacy Recommendations

274 As evident from the preceding sections, there is a wide range of fair information practices that have been promoted
275 around the world. In an effort to promote “best practices,” Liberty recommends that an implementing company
276 comply with all relevant laws. In the absence of laws, an implementing company should follow the most appropriate
277 fair information practices applicable to the jurisdiction and industry sector in which the company intends to do
278 business or offer products or services. Where applicable, an entity should not request or provide more information
279 than is necessary for the interaction.

280 In addition, the Liberty Alliance offers the following baseline set of fair information practices as guidelines that
281 companies, whether in the role of Service Provider, Identity Provider, Attribute Provider, Discovery Service or
282 otherwise, should consider adopting when implementing Liberty Specifications. These recommended fair information
283 practices are based on principles of notice, choice and control, access, security, quality, relevance, timeliness and
284 accountability. Each of these practices, and its appropriateness in the context of Liberty Services, is briefly described
285 below.

- 286 • **Notice.** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers should provide to the Principal clear notice of who is
287 collecting the information, what information they collect, how they collect it (e.g., directly or through non-
288 obvious means, such as cookies), how they provide choice, access, security, quality, relevance and
289 timeliness to Principals, whether they disclose the information collected to other entities, and whether
290 other entities are collecting information through them. Providing notice is particularly important for
291 Service Providers who may seek additional information beyond what is provided through other Liberty-
292 Enabled Providers.
- 293 • **Choice.** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers should offer Principals choices, to the extent
294 appropriate given the circumstances, regarding what personally identifiable information is collected and
295 how the personally identifiable information is used beyond the use for which the information was
296 provided. In addition, consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers should allow Principals to review,
297 verify, or update consents previously given or denied. The Liberty Specifications provide for both access
298 permissions to allow a Principal to specify whether and under what circumstances a Service Provider can
299 obtain given attributes, as well as an “envelope” for the discovery of or negotiation of usage directives as
300 part of profile sharing. Both aspects of the privacy capabilities established by the Liberty Specifications
301 should be fully implemented in a responsible manner and be easy for the Principal to configure. In
302 particular, Liberty-Enabled Providers should provide for “usage directives” for data through either
303 contractual arrangements, or through the use of Rights Expression Languages, as well as implementing the
304 access authorization elements contained in the Liberty Specifications that permit the Principal to make
305 certain choices regarding collection and use of personally identifiable information.
- 306 • **Principal Access to Personally Identifiable Information (PII).** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled
307 Providers that maintain PII should offer, consistent with and as required by relevant law, a Principal
308 reasonable access to view the non-proprietary PII that it collects from the Principal or maintains about the

309 Principal. Access should not be construed to require access to proprietary data, public record data, or
 310 aggregate data.

311 • ***Quality.*** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers that collect and maintain personally identifiable
 312 information should permit Principals a reasonable opportunity to provide corrections to the personally
 313 identifiable information that is stored by such entities.

314 • ***Relevance.*** Liberty-Enabled Providers should use PII for the purpose for which it was collected, or the
 315 purposes about which the Principal has consented.

316 • ***Timeliness.*** Liberty-Enabled Providers should retain PII only so long as is necessary or requested and
 317 consistent with a retention policy accepted by the Principal.

318 • ***Complaint Resolution.*** Liberty-Enabled Providers should offer a complaint resolution mechanism for
 319 Principals who believe their PII has been mishandled.

320 • ***Security.*** Liberty-Enabled Providers should take reasonable steps to protect and provide an adequate level
 321 of security for PII.

322 Implementing companies should be aware that the Liberty Specifications provide tools the implementing company can
 323 use to help it comply with fair information practices, regardless of which protocol is adopted. These tools are
 324 discussed in more detail below. However, implementing companies should also be aware that any of these fair
 325 information practices (as well as any recommendations set forth in this document) are only guidelines, and may or
 326 may not satisfy or be consistent with the privacy laws, rules, and regulations applicable to the implementing company.
 327 Therefore, Liberty strongly recommends that any implementing company consult with local counsel to determine
 328 which laws are applicable to the company's business and how best to comply with those laws.

329 In order to address various privacy concerns and implement fair information practices using the Liberty Specifications,
 330 it is important for an implementing company to understand how certain schemas and protocols in the specifications
 331 operate and be aware of certain tools contained in the specifications that can be used to respond to such considerations.

332 Consumer choice and permission are central to Liberty's vision. The framework of the Liberty Specifications is built
 333 upon the presumption that PII will be shared ("attribute sharing") in the context of permissioning, i.e., upon the
 334 consent of the Principal and in accordance with the usages expressed by the Principal. Such attribute sharing should
 335 be predicated upon not only a prior agreement between the Liberty-Enabled Providers, but also upon providing notice
 336 to the Principal and obtaining the Principal's consent. The Liberty Specifications allow for recording both the notice
 337 and consent in an auditable fashion. Liberty recognizes that depending upon the particular implementation, for
 338 example in financial services transactions, it may be important to both the Principal and the Liberty-Enabled Provider
 339 to have increased certainty regarding their transaction. Such certainty may be achieved through the use of auditable
 340 records of notice and consent. In addition, Liberty-enabled providers should take reasonable measures to prevent
 341 unauthorized acquisition of a principal's personal information (e.g. by harvesting).

342 Within this framework, the Liberty Specifications identify various roles that comprise the federated identity
 343 infrastructure. Each of these roles has certain responsibilities in relation to protecting the privacy and security of a
 344 Principal's personally identifiable information. Liberty-Enabled Providers may function in multiple provider roles.
 345 These roles and their respective responsibilities include, among others:

- 346 • ***Principal*** – A Principal is an entity that can acquire a federated identity that is capable of making
 347 decisions and can be authenticated and vouched for by an Identity Provider. In a business-to-consumer
 348 (B2C) context, the Principal is the consumer. In other contexts, the Principal could be an individual, a
 349 corporation, or another legal entity. The fair information best practices set forth in this document are
 350 aimed to protect the confidentiality of the Principal's personally identifiable information. Principals
 351 should be vigilant when they provide their credentials (e.g., passwords, secure tokens, etc., entered
 352 over secure channels) or attributes over the web to protect themselves from being spoofed or otherwise
 353 providing such information to an unintended party. In addition, Principals should use care when
 354 establishing or modifying credentials. Also, Principals should become familiar with an entity's posted
 355 data practices before providing personally identifiable data to such entity.

- 356 • ***Service Provider*** – A Service Provider is an entity that provides services to Principals. Liberty
 357 envisions that the Service Provider will, upon request from a Principal, request that the Identity
 358 Provider (which may be itself or another party) authenticate the Principal. After the Principal has been
 359 authenticated, the Service Provider may request that certain attributes regarding the Principal be

360 provided to it in order to provide the requested services to the Principal. Service Providers should
361 inform Principals of their data practices, provide the Principal with certain choices regarding secondary
362 uses of the Principal's personally identifiable information, maintain the security of a Principal's
363 personally identifiable information within their control, and not use or share such information except in
364 accordance with the Service Provider's privacy policy and/or the consent or usage directives of the
365 Principal. The Service Provider should at all times ensure that its data practices conform with
366 applicable local law and practice.

367 • ***Identity Provider*** – An Identity Provider is an entity that creates, maintains, and manages identity
368 information for Principals. It authenticates and vouches for the Principal to other Service Providers
369 within an Authentication Domain. The Identity Provider should also safeguard the Principal's identity
370 credentials, and have some mechanisms in place to require the Authentication Domain to use the
371 credentials in a proper manner.

372 • ***Attribute Provider*** – An Attribute Provider is an entity that provides attributes to a requester (i.e., a
373 Service Provider) in accordance with its own policies and a Principal's permissions. Attribute
374 Providers store and negotiate access control information defining the circumstances under which a
375 Service Provider will be granted access to a given attribute(s). Attribute Providers store and negotiate
376 usage directives that specify the manner in which attributes can be used, stored, and disclosed. An
377 Attribute Provider has at least the same responsibilities as Service Providers with respect to clear
378 notice (including notice to the Principal regarding what are the default usage directives and how the
379 Principal can change such usage directives), choice, security, and responsible use and sharing of a
380 Principal's data.

381 • ***Discovery Service*** – A Discovery Service is an entity (usually an Identity Provider) that has the ability
382 to direct attribute requesters to the relevant Attribute Provider who provides the requested classes of
383 attributes for the specified Principal. The Discovery Service should register only those Attribute
384 Providers in accordance with the consent or usage directives of the Principal. The Discovery Service
385 should permit the Principal to see which Attribute Providers have been registered on the Principal's
386 behalf. An attribute requester can locate the Attribute Providers for a given Principal, even though the
387 attribute requester and Attribute Providers do not have a common name for the Principal.

388 The following are two hypothetical examples of implementation of the Liberty Specifications by various companies.
389 In Example 1, we start with the actual equipment manufacturers who could build Internet infrastructure software
390 utilizing the specifications. Example 1 goes through the steps to an end user experience. Example 2 is a one page
391 summary illustration of the process undertaken and explained in Example 1. Where Example 1 starts with software
392 manufacturer, Example 2 shows the same process, in summary form, starting with the user.

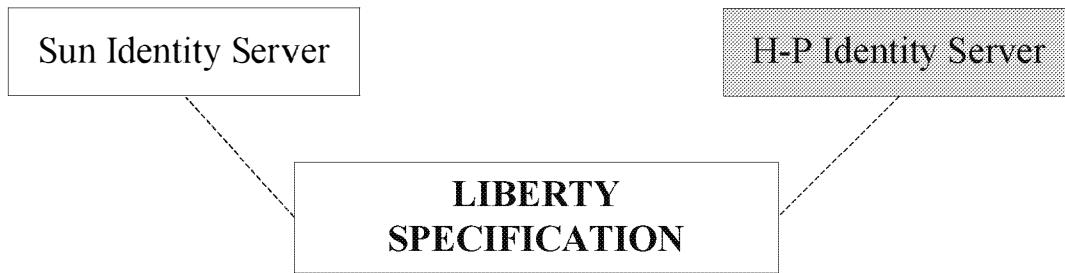
393

393 **Hypothetical Example 1**

394 *1. Technology Implementation*

395 a. Sun develops an identity server (infrastructure software) using the Project Liberty Alliance
396 specifications (Liberty Specification) in order to allow the Sun identity server to interoperate with other
397 technology products that implement the Liberty Specification.

398 b. H-P develops an identity server (infrastructure software) using the Liberty Specification in order to
399 allow the H-P identity server to interoperate with other technology products that implement the Liberty
400 Specification.



401

402

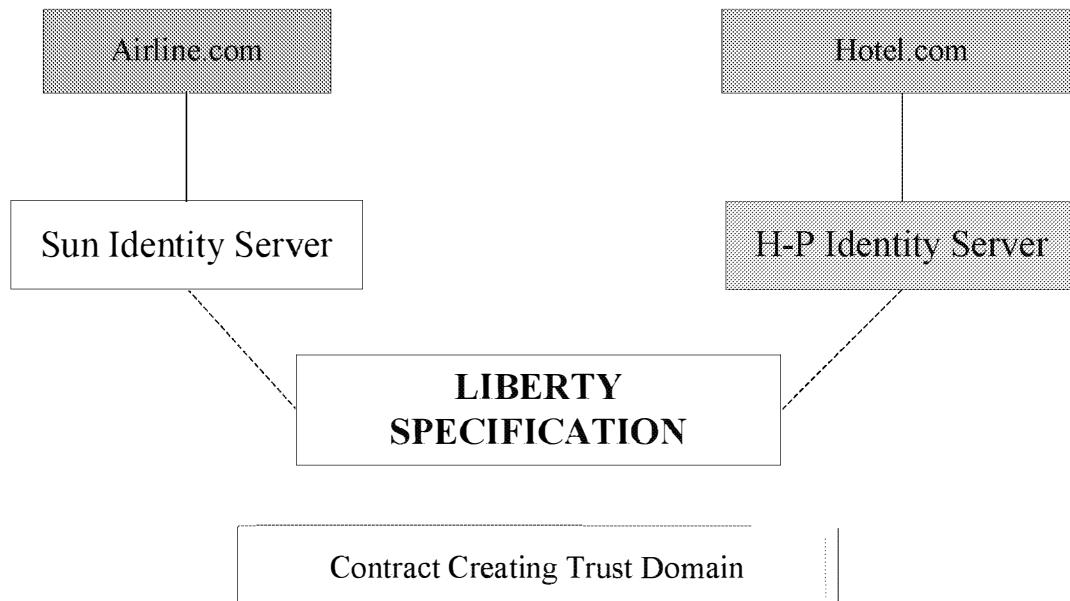
403

403 2. *Services Deployment*

404 a. Airline employs a Sun Identity Server to authenticate users to its website, maintain frequent flyer
405 information, and provide linkage to its reservation system.

406 b. Hotel uses an HP Identity Server to authenticate users to its website and facilitate online reservations.

407



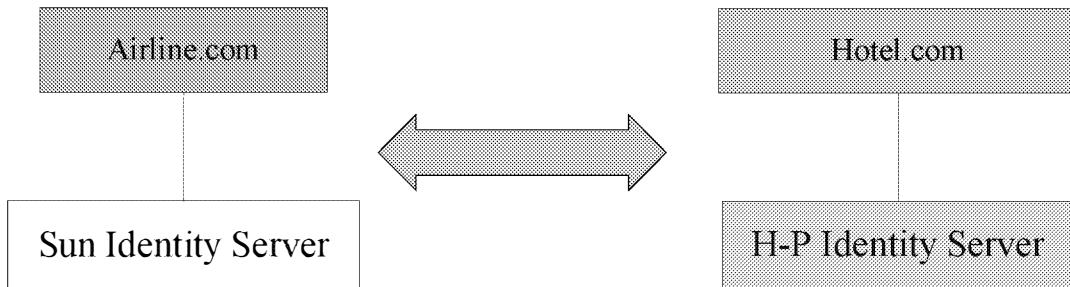
408

409

409 3. Trust Domain

410 a. Airline and Hotel enter into a contract, which requires, among other things, that Hotel will accept
 411 Airline's authentication of a customer that is a customer of both Airline and Hotel (Airline is an Identity
 412 Provider and Hotel is a Service Provider.)

413

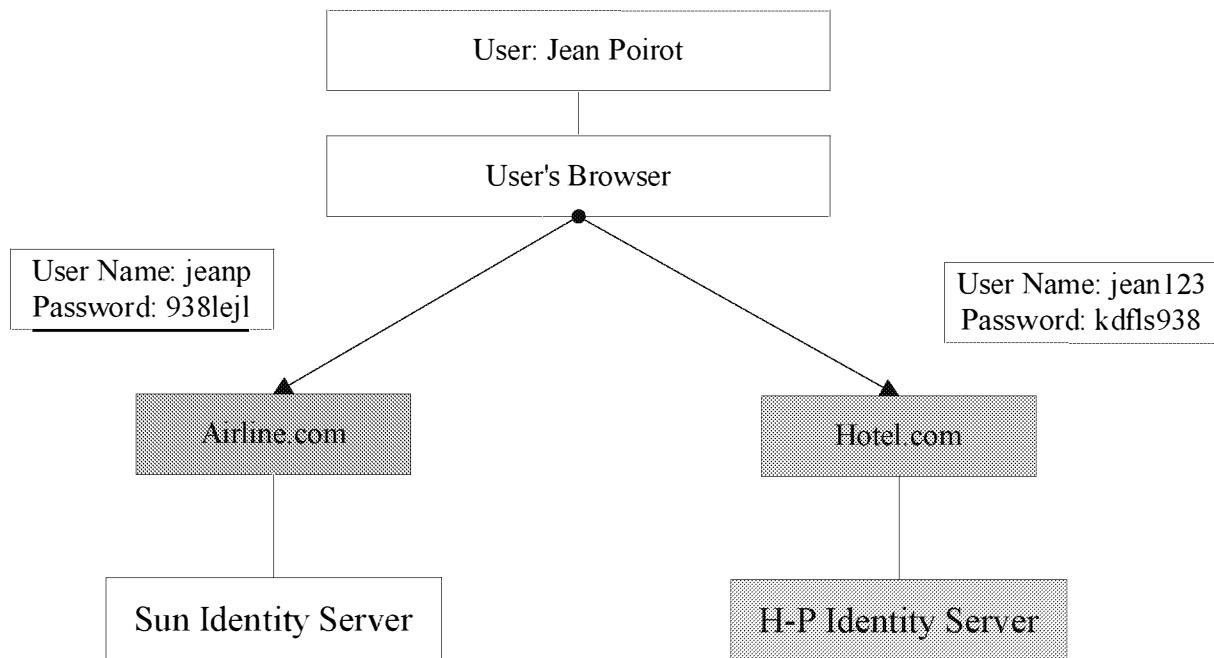


414

415 4. Account Establishment

416 a. User establishes an account with Airline.com with User ID JeanP and a password.
 417 b. User establishes an account at Hotel.com with user name Jean123 and a password.

418



419

420

421

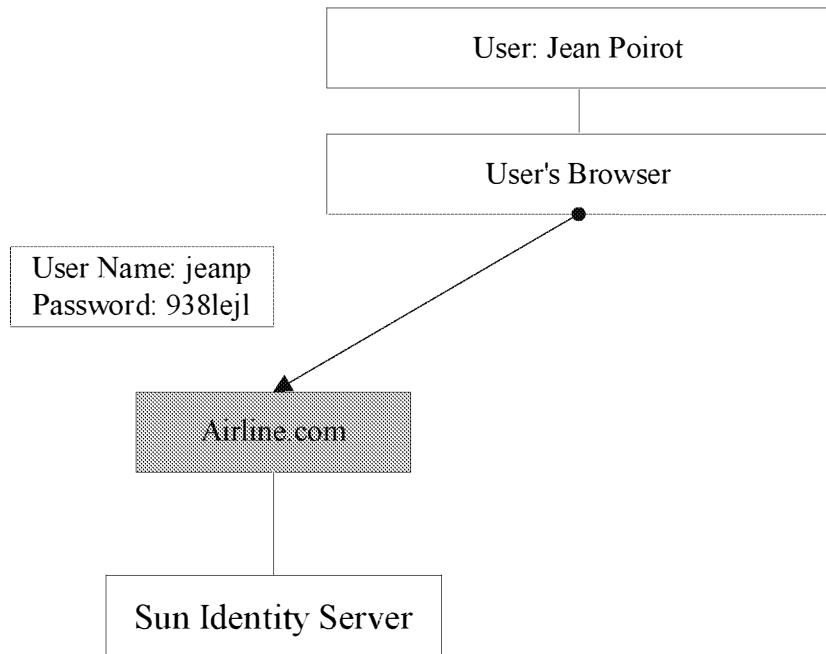
422

423

424 5. *Linking Accounts*

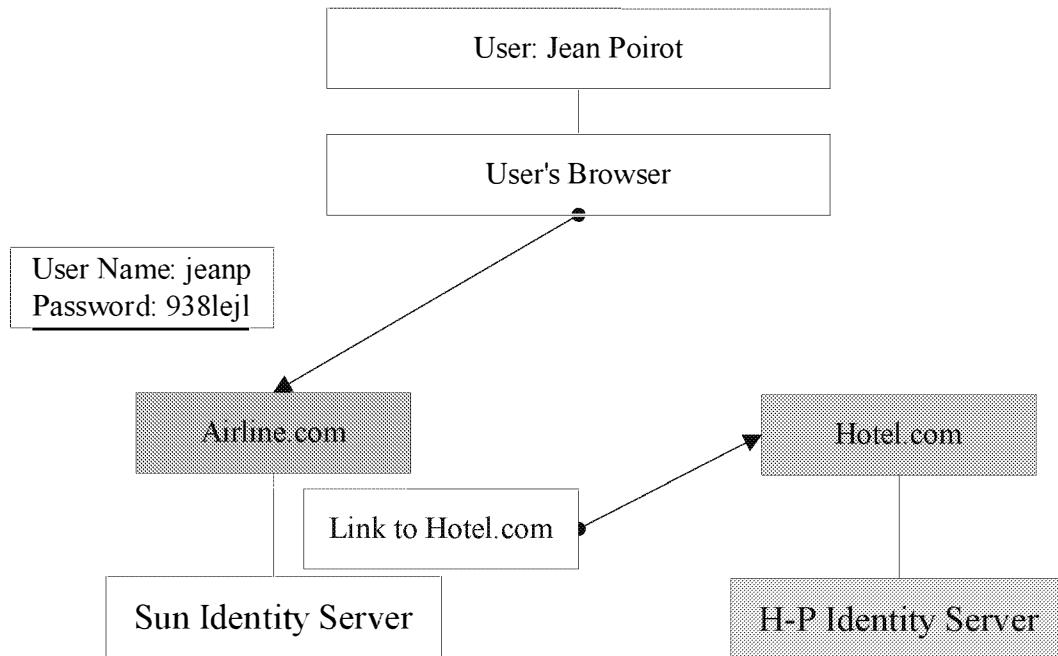
425 a. Jean logs onto the Airline site with user name and password

426



427

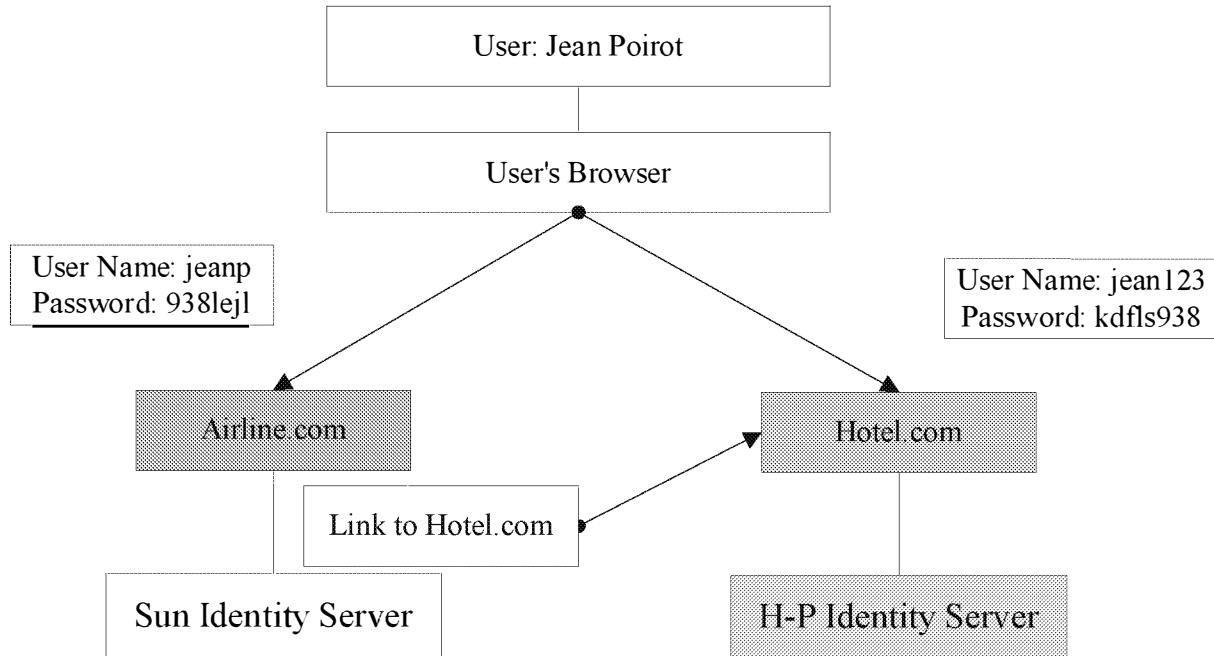
428 b. Airline has a link that JeanP can use to go to the Hotel website.



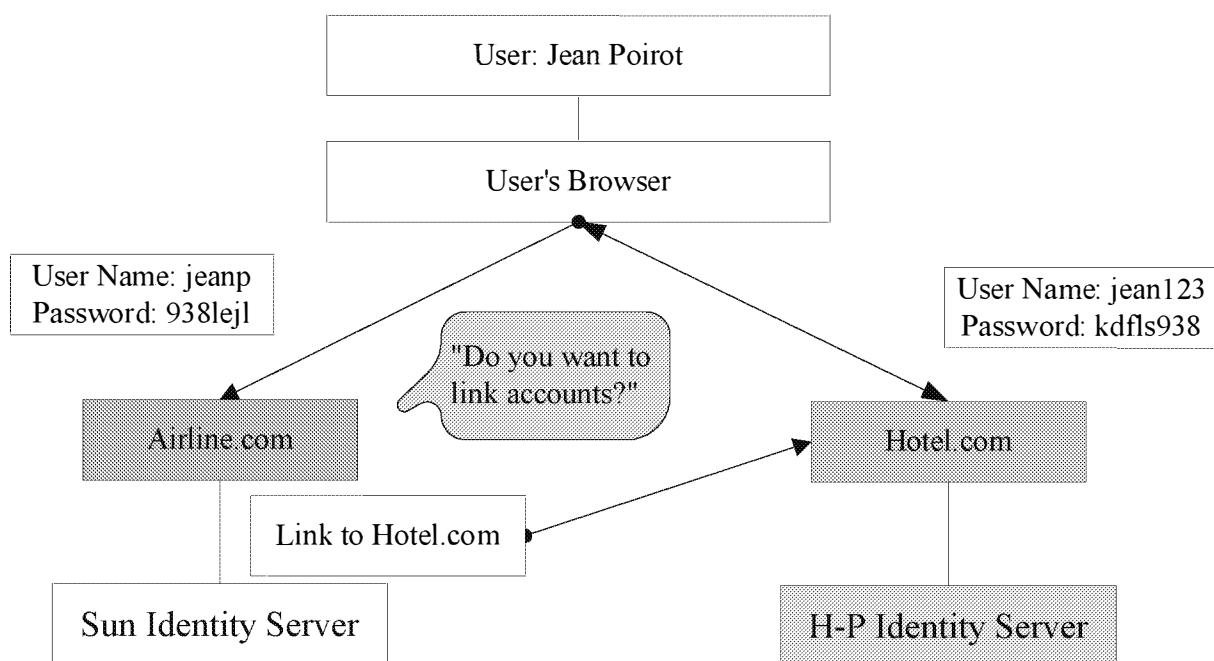
429

430

430 c. JeanP clicks on that link and goes to the Hotel website and logs in with username Jean123 and
 431 password.



432
 433 d. Hotel would know that Jean123 came from the Airline site and asks if Jean123 would like to link his
 434 account at Airline with his account at Hotel, enabling single sign-on between the two accounts.



435

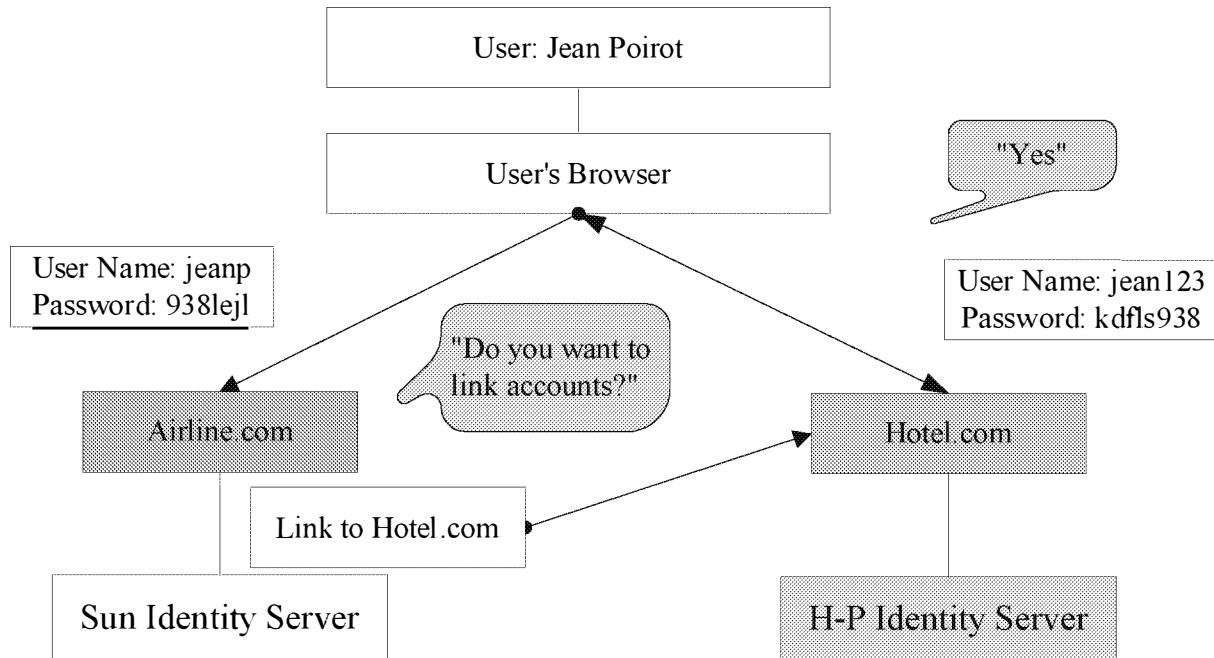
436

437

438

439

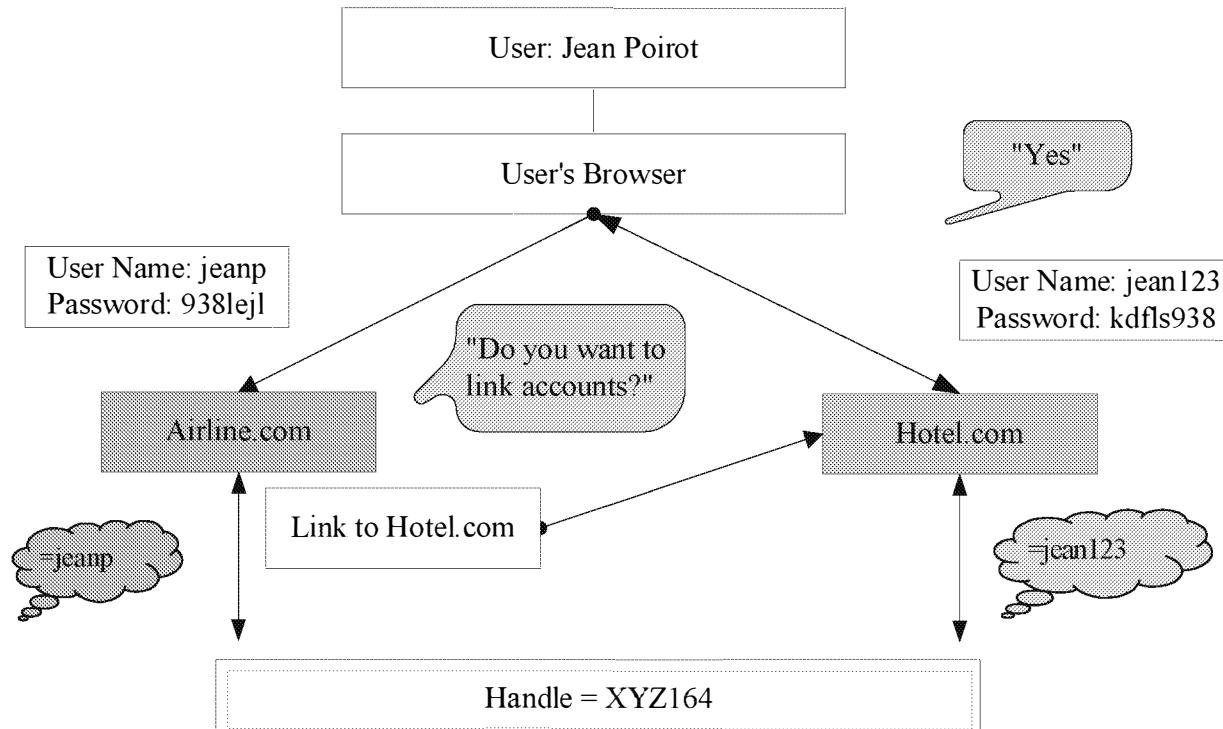
e. Jean123 indicates his consent by clicking "yes".



440

441

442 f. Airline and Hotel agree on a random set of characters (handle) by which each will recognize user as
443 their customer (e.g., Airline: XYZ164 = authenticated JeanP; Hotel: XYZ164 = authenticated Jean123)

444
445

446

447 6. *Simplified sign-on (SSO)*

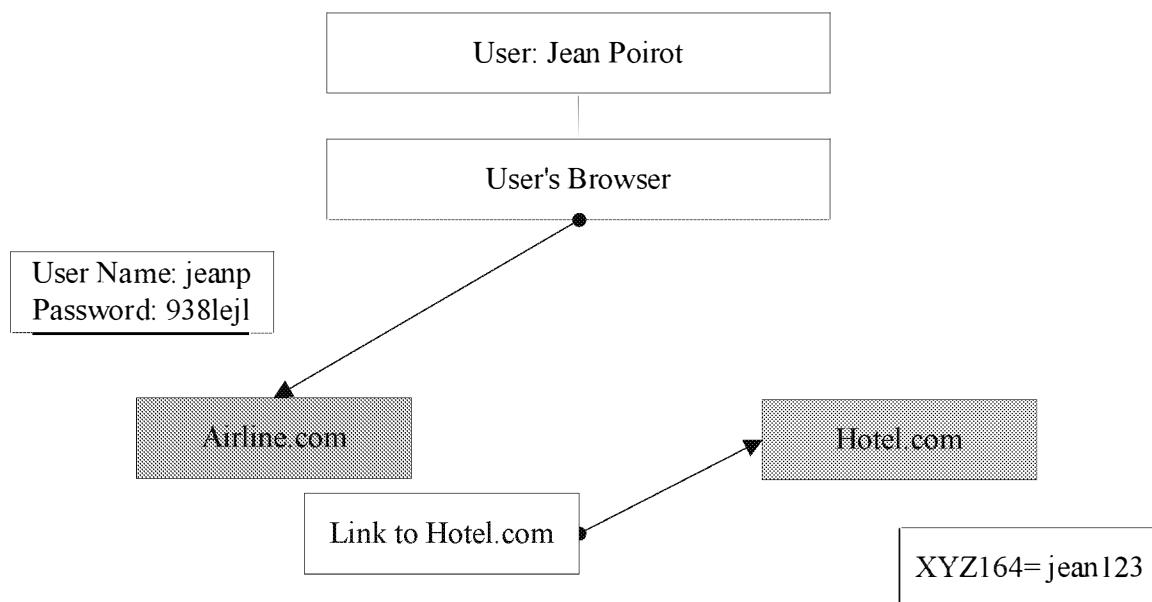
448 a. User goes to Airline and logs in as JeanP and password.

449 b. User clicks on link to Hotel website.

450 c. Airline sends opaque handle to Hotel site with username.

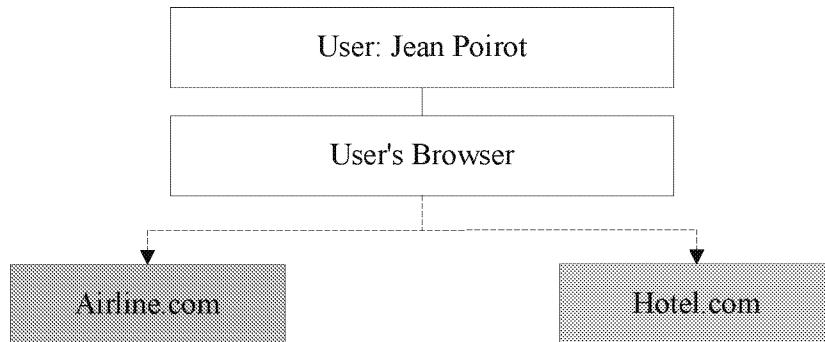
451 d. Hotel receives opaque handle and recognizes user as authenticated Jean123.

452



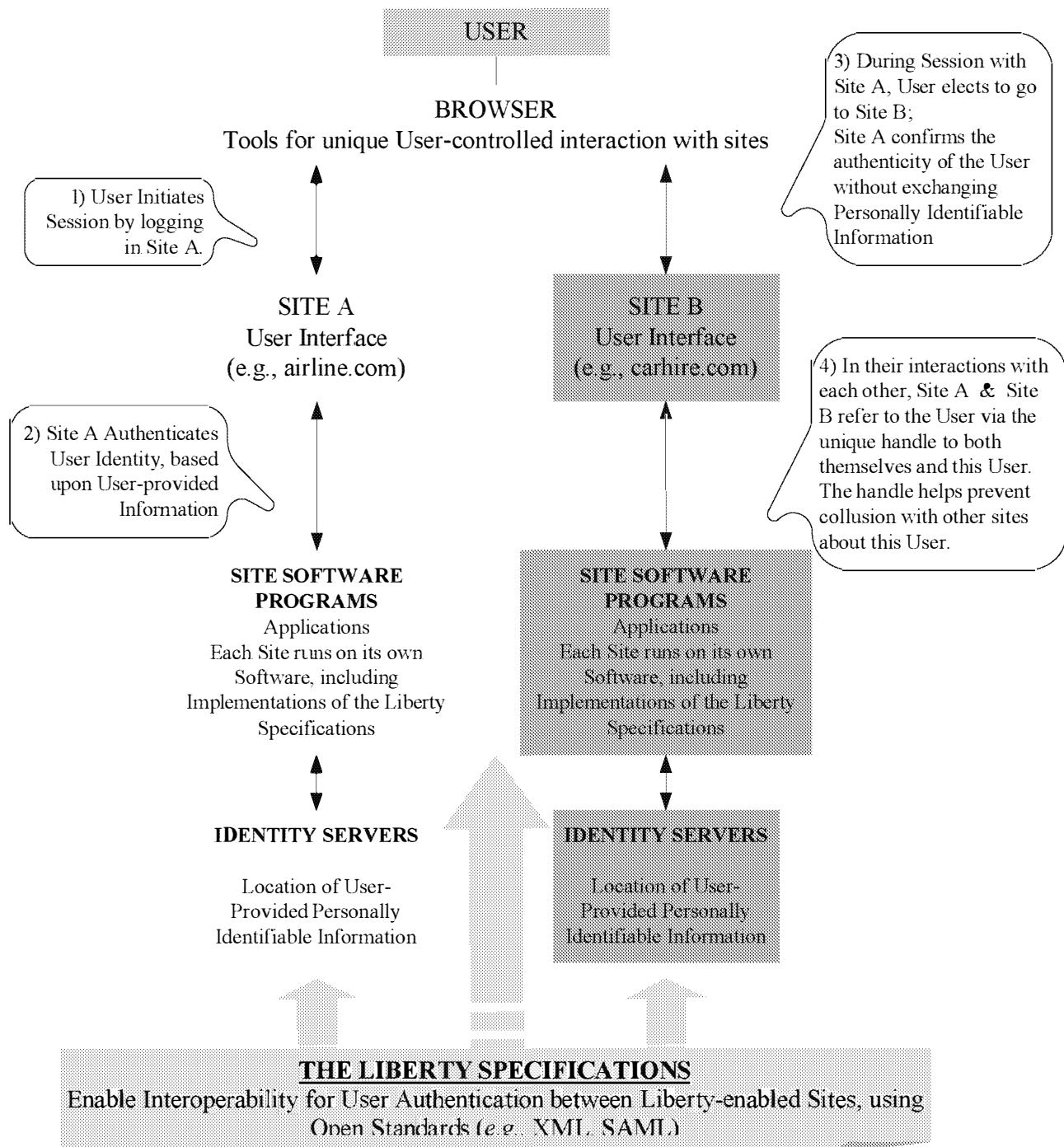
453

454 e. When Jean logs out of either site, he is automatically logged out of both sites.

455
456

457

457 The following diagram is a summary hypothetical example of deployment by various companies:



458
459

460

461 In either example, if starting at an Identity Provider, the Principal makes an initial authentication by presenting a user
462 name (real or pseudonymous) and a corresponding password. Next, the Principal establishes a local account with
463 various Service Providers. The final step is for the Principal to link accounts. Account linking will likely be a two-step
464 process. First the Principal consents to account linking and then provides specific consent for each Service Provider.
465 After these steps, the Principal will be able to benefit from SSO and surf the Internet in a Trust Domain using the same
466 name and password given initially to the Identity Provider.

467 Alternatively, a Principal may wish to connect to a Service Provider without first going to an Identity Provider. In this
 468 case the Service Provider will typically provide the Principal with a list of all Identity Providers with whom the
 469 Service Provider has formed a Trust Domain, and the Principal will be offered the opportunity to click on its preferred
 470 Identity Provider in order to authenticate. The Service Provider will redirect the Principal's browser to the chosen
 471 Identity Provider who will recognize the Principal by name and password (which the Principal will have to disclose).
 472 The Principal is then authenticated for all Providers within that Trust Domain for this session of Internet use.

473 At the end of the session, the Principal will benefit from an automatic Single-Log-Out performed by the system, i.e.,
 474 by logging out of any site, the Principal can be automatically logged out of all of the other sites visited during that
 475 particular session of Internet use.

476 Of course, it is also possible for a Principal to visit a single Service Provider and log into that Service Provider using
 477 its user name and password recognized by that Service Provider, but it will not be able to take advantage of SSO until
 478 it authenticates at an Identity Provider.

479 In the preceding illustration, Jean now has a federated identity between Airline and Hotel. Assume that Jean has also
 480 federated his identity at Bank with his Airline and Hotel identities. Jean's identity at Airline includes Jean's name,
 481 address, and frequent flier information. Jean's account at Bank includes an electronic wallet where Jean stores his
 482 credit card information. Bank has previously notified Airline that it has credit card information related to Jean. Jean
 483 logs in at the Airline website, visits the Hotel website, and desires to make a reservation for a hotel room. In order to
 484 take a reservation, Hotel needs information regarding Jean's name, address, and credit card information. Hotel
 485 requests this information from Airline. After checking Jean's preferences regarding data, Airline provides the name
 486 and address information to Hotel, and directs Hotel to obtain credit card information from Bank. After checking
 487 Jean's preferences regarding data disclosure, Bank provides credit card information to Hotel. All of these interactions
 488 between Hotel, Airline, and Bank are done "behind the scenes." After Jean makes his request to make a reservation,
 489 his name, address, and credit card information are automatically included in the form presented to Jean at Hotel's
 490 website to make his reservation.

491 In this example, Airline acts not only as an Identity Provider (authenticating Jean's identity for Hotel), but also as an
 492 Attribute Provider (providing name and address information to Hotel) and as a Discovery Service (letting Hotel know
 493 that Jean's credit card information may be obtained from Bank). Bank is also an Attribute Provider because it
 494 provides credit card information to Hotel.

495 The roles of each of the Liberty-Enabled providers should be viewed within a privacy policy framework in which fair
 496 information practices are implemented. The framework should address both whether an attribute requester may obtain
 497 access to certain classes of a Principal's attributes, and if yes, what fine-grained methods are allowed, and what data is
 498 returned to the attribute requester.

499 In order to enable implementers to set up this framework, the Liberty Specifications include a number of tools
 500 designed to (i) increase a Principal's choice and control with respect to (a) the federation of his identity within an
 501 Authentication Domain and (b) use and disclosure of personally identifiable information, and (ii) facilitate certain
 502 interactions among Identity Providers, Service Providers, and Attribute Providers without disclosing a Principal's
 503 identity. These tools include:

- 504 • ***Access Controls*** – The Liberty Specifications enable Liberty Providers to make access control decisions on
 505 behalf of the Principal. Liberty-Enabled Providers should provide a mechanism by which the Principal can
 506 specify his or her authorization policy. Thus, for example, a Principal might not allow his or her home
 507 address to go to a newspaper website, but might allow it to be sent to an online store as part of a sales
 508 transaction.
- 509 • ***Usage Directives*** – The Liberty Specifications describe a container that may be used to list or point to
 510 usage directives regarding either the intended use of a requested attribute (from the requester), or the
 511 allowed usage of a requested attribute (from the attribute owner/holder). The Attribute Provider and the
 512 Service Provider may negotiate acceptable usage directives. The Attribute Provider can provide the
 513 Service Provider with a list of acceptable usage directives when the intended usage requested by the
 514 Service Provider doesn't match the Principal's usage directives.
- 515 • ***Opaque Handles*** – The Liberty Specifications support opaque handles, the assignment of an arbitrary
 516 sequence of characters by the Identity Provider or Service Provider to identify a Principal. The opaque
 517 handle has meaning only in the context of the relationship between the Identity Provider and the Service
 518 Provider. Thus a Principal's identity and actions are harder to track as the Principal navigates among SPs.

519 The opaque handle mechanism allows the Service Provider to know which of their own customers, with
 520 local accounts, has navigated to the site. It facilitates identity federation between the Principal's accounts
 521 at the Identity Provider and the Service Provider *without* transferring any PII about the Principal to the
 522 Service Provider prior to identity federation.

523 • ***Anonymous Identity Protocols*** – The Liberty Specifications contain protocols for sharing personalization
 524 data with a Service Provider on an anonymous basis to allow for personalization of websites and services
 525 without disclosure of the identity of the Principal or requiring the Principal to have an account with the
 526 Service Provider. Using this tool, the Principal's actual identity is not released to the Service Provider.
 527 Rather, a transient name identifier is given to the Service Provider for each session that the Identity
 528 Provider can map to its account for the Principal.

529 In order for a company to effectively set up a privacy framework and implement fair information practices, Liberty
 530 recognizes that there are several points within the Liberty infrastructure where privacy concerns can be addressed and
 531 enforced. Liberty calls these "Policy Enforcement Points." For example,

- 532 1. The Identity Provider can decide whether or not to authenticate a Principal based on the credentials
 533 provided and the Identity Providers authentication policy.
- 534 2. At the point where a Service Provider receives an authentication from an Identity Provider, the Service
 535 Provider can decide whether a Principal's authentication context is sufficient based on the Service
 536 Provider's authentication policy.
- 537 3. At the point where an attribute requester requests Attribute Provider information for certain attributes from
 538 a Discovery Service, the Discovery Service can decide whether to facilitate an attribute requester's
 539 interaction with an Attribute Provider, based on a Principal-managed policy and the Discovery Service's
 540 policy.
- 541 4. At the point where an Attribute Provider has received the attribute request, the Attribute Provider may
 542 mediate an attribute requester's access to its services and data, based on a Principal-managed policy and
 543 the Attribute Provider's policy.

544 As noted previously, Principals should have the capability to specify policies governing access to their attributes.
 545 These Principal-specific policies could be defined by assigning some predefined rules to a particular class of attribute
 546 requesters, or via a user interface enabling Principals to define sophisticated rules. Also, the Service Provider, Identity
 547 Provider, Attribute Provider, and Discovery Service will need to write policies governing their infrastructure and their
 548 service. In any event, Principal specific permission rules should override default rules if they intersect. Most of these
 549 policies can be enforced at the Policy Enforcement Points numbers 3 and 4 identified above.

550 The access controls noted above can be used by an implementing company to set up an access management system to
 551 determine when and under what conditions various requesters may have access to requested information. The access
 552 decisions may be determined based on (i) what information is requested, (ii) what the requester wants to do with that
 553 information, (iii) the characteristics of the requester, and/or (iv) whether the owner of the requested information (i.e.,
 554 the Principal) is online with a certain authentication context, etc. An implementing company should comply with its
 555 fair information practices when setting up its access management system.

556 In addition, by using the usage directives, implementing companies should give Principals the opportunity to specify
 557 how their personal information will be disclosed or accessed in a default context. In addition, under the Liberty
 558 Specifications, Principals can create the opportunity to validate, override, or update the Principal's default policies at
 559 request time by specifying obligations in their policies that are fulfilled by returning *permission exceptions* to
 560 requesting attribute requesters. These permission exceptions signal that the Principal must interactively validate,
 561 override, update or supply her instructions in the context of a particular transaction.

562 7. Security

563 Security is a critical component of any computing system, providing the necessary safeguards for data protection and
 564 integrity. Security is also a fundamental basis of consumer trust and confidence in any computing environment. As
 565 with privacy, it is incumbent upon all participants to provide and practice good security. Liberty-Enabled Providers
 566 must establish and maintain the level of security appropriate to the transaction and the data. Principals should be
 567 equally vigilant to protect themselves from security risks inherent in the architecture of the Internet.

568 Social vulnerabilities abound when deploying Internet technology; several factors contribute. A non-exhaustive list
 569 includes: human nature, rogues, buggy software, insecure systems, bad designs, poor human interfaces, and a large
 570 installed computing base of untrusted systems. These factors present a spectrum of opportunities for malicious
 571 behavior. Robust security precautions and implementations help to limit such opportunities. The Liberty Alliance
 572 specifications are based on existing, well known Internet protocols and mechanisms. Security weaknesses inherent in
 573 the architecture of the Internet are neither increased nor eliminated by the Liberty Specifications.

574 Security builds trust between the user and system and allows the user to let the system perform certain actions –
 575 therefore security will actually play a significant role in every system and environment. In a perfect situation, security
 576 is built as an almost invisible but strong service, which will protect the user against different attacks and/or minimize
 577 possible negative consequences.

578 Strong security is an essential part of a well-working network service solution, and Liberty offers security measures
 579 and guidance designed to prevent attackers from causing troubles for Liberty-Enabled Providers or for the Principal.
 580 The Liberty Alliance has referenced both the work of the OECD and the U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC) in
 581 providing this security framework.

582 The U.S. Federal Trade Commission examined security issues in 2000. The Final Report of the FTC Advisory
 583 Committee on Online Access and Security bears quoting in part:

584 Most consumers – and most companies – would expect commercial Web sites that collect and hold personal
 585 data to provide some kind of security for that data. Identifying the most effective and efficient solution for data
 586 security is a difficult task. Security is application-specific and process-specific. Different types of data warrant
 587 different levels of protection.

588 Security – and the resulting protection for personal data – can be set at almost any level depending on the costs
 589 one is willing to incur, not only in dollars but in inconvenience for users and administrators of the system.
 590 Security is contextual: to achieve appropriate security, security professionals typically vary the level of
 591 protection based on the value of the information on the systems, the cost of particular security measures and the
 592 costs of a security failure in terms of both liability and public confidence.

593 To complicate matters, both computer systems and methods of violating computer security are evolving at a
 594 rapid clip, with the result that computer security is more a process than a state. Security that was adequate
 595 yesterday is inadequate today. Anyone who sets detailed computer security standards – whether for a
 596 company, an industry, or a government body – must be prepared to revisit and revise those standards on a
 597 constant basis.

598 When companies address this problem, they should develop a program that is a continuous life cycle designed
 599 to meet the needs of the particular organization or industry. The cycle should begin with an assessment of risk;
 600 the establishment and implementation of a security architecture and management of policies and procedures
 601 based on the identified risk; training programs; regular audits and continuous monitoring; and periodic
 602 reassessment of risk. These essential elements can be designed to meet the unique requirements of
 603 organizations regardless of size.¹⁰

604 In addition to the above FTC recommendations, the Liberty Alliance offers the OECD Security principles for
 605 consideration by implementing companies in accordance with particular service offerings in various jurisdictions.
 606 These nine principles are applicable to all Liberty-Enabled Providers, or in OECD terms, “participants.” The specific
 607 responsibilities of any Liberty-Enabled Provider will vary according to their roles. The OECD Security Principles
 608 are:¹¹

609 **I) Awareness**

610 ***Participants should be aware of the need for security of information systems and networks and what they can do to***
 611 ***enhance security.***

¹⁰ US Federal Trade Commission Advisory Committee, “Final Report on Online Access and Security.”

¹¹ OECD, “OECD Guidelines for the Security of Information Systems and Networks: Towards a Culture of Security.”

612 Awareness of the risks and available safeguards is the first line of defense for the security of information systems and
 613 networks. Information systems and networks can be affected by both internal and external risks. Participants should
 614 understand that security failures may significantly harm systems and networks under their control. They should also be
 615 aware of the potential harm to others arising from interconnectivity and interdependency. Participants should be aware
 616 of the configuration of, and available updates for, their system, its place within networks, good practices that they can
 617 implement to enhance security, and the needs of other participants.

618 ***2) Responsibility***

619 ***All participants are responsible for the security of information systems and networks.***

620 Participants depend upon interconnected local and global information systems and networks and should understand
 621 their responsibility for the security of those information systems and networks. They should be accountable in a
 622 manner appropriate to their individual roles. Participants should review their own policies, practices, measures, and
 623 procedures regularly and assess whether these are appropriate to their environment. Those who develop, design and
 624 supply products and services should address system and network security and distribute appropriate information
 625 including updates in a timely manner so that users are better able to understand the security functionality of products
 626 and services and their responsibilities related to security.

627 ***3) Response***

628 ***Participants should act in a timely and co-operative manner to prevent, detect and respond to security incidents.***

629 Recognizing the interconnectivity of information systems and networks and the potential for rapid and widespread
 630 damage, participants should act in a timely and co-operative manner to address security incidents. They should share
 631 information about threats and vulnerabilities, as appropriate, and implement procedures for rapid and effective co-
 632 operation to prevent, detect and respond to security incidents. Where permissible, this may involve cross-border
 633 information sharing and co-operation.

634 ***4) Ethics***

635 ***Participants should respect the legitimate interests of others.***

636 Given the pervasiveness of information systems and networks in our societies, participants need to recognize that their
 637 action or inaction may harm others. Ethical conduct is therefore crucial and participants should strive to develop and
 638 adopt best practices and to promote conduct that recognizes security needs and respects the legitimate interests of
 639 others.

640 ***5) Democracy***

641 ***The security of information systems and networks should be compatible with essential values of a democratic
 642 society.***

643 Security should be implemented in a manner consistent with the values recognized by democratic societies including
 644 the freedom to exchange thoughts and ideas, the free flow of information, the confidentiality of information and
 645 communication, the appropriate protection of personal information, openness and transparency.

646 ***6) Risk assessment***

647 ***Participants should conduct risk assessments.***

648 Risk assessment identifies threats and vulnerabilities and should be sufficiently broad-based to encompass key internal
 649 and external factors, such as technology, physical and human factors, policies and third-party services with security
 650 implications. Risk assessment will allow determination of the acceptable level of risk and assist the selection of
 651 appropriate controls to manage the risk of potential harm to information systems and networks in light of the nature
 652 and importance of the information to be protected. Because of the growing interconnectivity of information systems,
 653 risk assessment should include consideration of the potential harm that may originate from others or be caused to
 654 others.

655 7) Security design and implementation**656 Participants should incorporate security as an essential element of information systems and networks.**

657 Systems, networks and policies need to be properly designed, implemented and co-ordinated to optimize security. A
 658 major, but not exclusive, focus of this effort is the design and adoption of appropriate safeguards and solutions to
 659 avoid or limit potential harm from identified threats and vulnerabilities. Both technical and non-technical safeguards
 660 and solutions are required and should be proportionate to the value of the information on the organization's systems
 661 and networks. Security should be a fundamental element of all products, services, systems and networks, and an
 662 integral part of system design and architecture. For end users, security design and implementation consists largely of
 663 selecting and configuring products and services for their system.

664 8) Security management**665 Participants should adopt a comprehensive approach to security management.**

666 Security management should be based on risk assessment and should be dynamic, encompassing all levels of
 667 participants' activities and all aspects of their operations. It should include forward-looking responses to emerging
 668 threats and address prevention, detection and response to incidents, systems recovery, ongoing maintenance, review
 669 and audit. Information system and network security policies, practices, measures and procedures should be co-
 670 ordinated and integrated to create a coherent system of security. The requirements of security management depend
 671 upon the level of involvement, the role of the participant, the risk involved and system requirements.

672 9) Reassessment**673 Participants should review and reassess the security of information systems and networks, and make appropriate
 674 modifications to security policies, practices, measures and procedures.**

675 New and changing threats and vulnerabilities are continuously discovered. Participants should continually review,
 676 reassess and modify all aspects of security to deal with these evolving risks.

677 8. Internet Security Vulnerabilities and Precautions

678 Regardless of the fair information principles and privacy practices adopted, security remains a universal vital tenet of
 679 fair information practices. Security vulnerabilities exist due to both system defects and human error or malice. There
 680 is a risk that these vulnerabilities will be exploited in an attack of some form. Attacks have different properties
 681 depending on which vulnerabilities are being exploited. Below are descriptions of the most common types of attacks.

- 682 • **Denial-of-service.** Prevents authorized users from accessing the system resource or delays authorized
 683 operations and functions. This can cause severe problems, e.g., for the Liberty-enabled providers' business
 684 and brand.
- 685 • **Dictionary.** An attack that uses a technique of successively trying all the words in some large, exhaustive
 686 list. This is a lesser kind of brute-force attack generally targeted at password authentication mechanisms.
 687 This kind of attack may lead, for example, to the impersonation of a user if an attacker can break the user's
 688 password.
- 689 • **Brute-force.** An attack that uses a technique of successively trying all possible combinations. This kind of
 690 attack may also lead, for example, to impersonation of the user if an attack can break the user's password.
 691 This attack requires more resources from an attacker compared to a dictionary attack but will provide
 692 better results when there is not a good dictionary available or when passwords are protected against being
 693 recognizable words.
- 694 • **Replay.** An attack in which a valid data transmission is maliciously or fraudulently repeated, either by the
 695 originator or by an adversary who intercepts the data and retransmits it, possibly as part of a spoofing
 696 attack.
- 697 • **Spoofing.** An attack in which one system entity illegitimately poses as (assumes the identity of) another
 698 entity. There is no way to prevent an attacker from erecting a false facade that mimics the appearance and

699 behavior of a legitimate website. If an attacker can lure the user into visiting such a site, then the user may
700 be fooled into believing he/she is visiting the authentic website. If the fake site happens to imitate a site at
701 which the user typically logs in, then the fake website may be able to collect the users credentials, such as,
702 an account name and password. The attacker could then use this information to impersonate the user at a
703 legitimate website. There is nothing about this attack, or the weaknesses exploited to carry it out, that are
704 specific to Liberty Specifications. It is a general vulnerability that both Principals and Liberty-Enabled
705 Providers must guard against.

706 Our purpose in presenting potential routes of attack is to explain the security vulnerabilities inherent in the Internet, so
707 that Liberty-Enabled Providers are aware of the various risks and threats and thus are able to safeguard against such
708 risks and threats. Implementers should closely monitor security risks noted in the industry, because the situation
709 changes rapidly, with new bugs found and existing ones corrected. Regardless of which avenue of attack is exploited,
710 several common security weaknesses can exacerbate the potential for breach. The following sections discuss some of
711 the more well known Internet insecurities and recommends precautions that may be taken.

712 8.1. Common Weaknesses

713 ***Weak Passwords*** – So-called “reusable passwords” are a typical means of authenticating users. Reusable means that
714 the password is constant and used multiple times to gain access to an account. User may choose weak, “guessable”
715 passwords which render their account susceptible to relatively simple guessing attacks (also known as “dictionary
716 attacks”). The risks of weak passwords are significantly compounded when users choose the same password to access
717 different accounts. This is especially true in a single sign-on environment.

718 Using arbitrary, unchecked, reusable passwords in conjunction with a single sign-on environment means that multiple
719 accounts may be compromised at once by guessing one password. If the user were to choose different, unrelated
720 passwords for each site, then the multiple sites would be better protected. But if the user does not, then the
721 vulnerability of the multiple sites is essentially the same with or without the single sign-on environment.

722 Where appropriate, Identity Providers should support other forms of authentication in addition to User ID and
723 password. In addition, Identity Providers should inform Principals how to formulate and protect their passwords from
724 unauthorized use. In the case of password usage, IdPs can also use password-checking mechanisms to check the
725 Principal’s password. However Liberty Specifications do not force these functionalities and their usage is dependent
726 on the IdP.

727 ***Embedded Login Forms*** – The ID-FF Architecture Overview 1.2 describes a deployment scenario where an Identity
728 Provider’s login form is embedded within a page presented by a Service Provider. Users often prefer the seamlessness
729 of this embedded form mechanism, which submits the users’ credentials back to the Identity Provider. However,
730 embedded forms may permit the inadvertent exposure of Identity Provider credentials to the Service Provider in
731 unencrypted clear text. Thus, when using authentication via embedded form, deployers should have contracts in place
732 requiring the protection of embedded login forms.

733 ***Publicly Available Terminals***– If a Principal accesses a Liberty-Enabled site using a public browser (such as at an
734 airport kiosk or Internet cafe), there may be no rapid way for the user to terminate the session. If a Principal leaves a
735 public browser without fully terminating the session, a subsequent Internet user may have access to the Principal’s
736 browser session.

737 To prevent session hijacking at a public browser, short-session times are recommended for Identity Providers. This, of
738 course, creates a problem for Principals who leave a browser session inactive, but intend to return after some time
739 period. This is a classic tradeoff problem, and the Liberty Alliance recommendation is in favor of security.

740 In addition, when during a slightly shorter interval the account shows activity by the Principal at a Service Provider,
741 the Service Provider with whom the activity is occurring sends a refresh message to the Identity Provider. One
742 plausible way to perform the “refresh” is for the Service Provider to send an Authentication Request (AuthnRequest)
743 message to the Identity Provider over the preferred channel containing some defined combination of the AuthnRequest
744 parameters, thus signaling that “the user is still active over here.”

745 We recommend that Identity Providers have a mechanism that enables the Principal to later return using a different
746 browser session and terminate the previous session. We also recommend that a change password feature be available

747 which challenges the user for their old password before accepting the new one. In addition, the Liberty Alliance
 748 currently intends to provide a refresh message mechanism in future versions of the Liberty Specifications.

749 ***Weak Cryptography*** – One of the most vexing issues in securing web services is that the currently installed browser
 750 base includes many browsers that only have weak 40-bit cryptography enabled. It is well known that 40-bit ciphers
 751 are considered weak and can be compromised with minimal computing effort. This poses a risk since users' encrypted
 752 communication may be easily recovered to the unencrypted form. However, the Liberty Specifications recommend
 753 cipher suites that minimally have effective secret key sizes of 112-bits. In case of signatures and public key
 754 cryptosystems the recommended minimum key length is 1024-bits.

755 8.2. Browser Vulnerabilities

756 Social vulnerabilities abound when deploying Internet technology; many factors contribute. A non-exhaustive list
 757 includes: human nature, rogues, buggy software, insecure systems, bad designs, poor human interfaces, and a large
 758 installed computing base of untrusted systems. These factors present a spectrum of opportunities to exploit one or a
 759 combination of weaknesses.

760 When using Internet browsers, we also need to consider their potential weaknesses. It is widely known that browsers
 761 have security-related weaknesses which can lead to information leakage. This best practices document provides
 762 information about such vulnerabilities and tips on how to avoid the most common vulnerabilities. Specifically, the
 763 security considerations section of the Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification describes potential
 764 vulnerabilities that are present as a consequence of implementation decisions and gives guidance in constructing name
 765 identifiers, which are a privacy-enhancing mechanism.¹² For more information about the secure implementation of
 766 Liberty version 2, please refer to the Liberty Alliance.¹³ This section discusses specific browser weakness and
 767 suggests mitigation strategies. In the next section we examine security issues related to well-established protocols.

768 ***Account Federation*** – The Liberty Specifications enable the Principal to federate identities, binding accounts together.
 769 If done improperly, the binding could release PII. The Liberty Specifications avoid this problem by recommending
 770 implementations that generate opaque handles using arbitrary sequences of characters that map into the account. The
 771 Liberty Specifications provide for the exchange of opaque handles to federate accounts. Additionally, Identity
 772 Providers are required to create unique opaque handles for each of the Principal's federated accounts. This diminishes
 773 the threat of collusion and tracking.

774 ***Cookie Exposure*** – Many web browsers implement a technology known as HTTP cookies. The intended function of
 775 cookies is to supplement web protocols with state management (or session) capabilities. Cookies can be transient
 776 (used just for the lifetime of the browser session) or persistent. A persistent cookie is saved to permanent storage so
 777 that it is available the next time the user starts a web browser. The various manners in which cookies are used may
 778 sometimes violate users' privacy. For example, a cookie may collect PII without a user's consent. In addition, web
 779 browsers and other Internet software have been shown to be susceptible to inadvertent disclosure of cookies to
 780 unauthorized parties. Since a cookie may contain PII, or could even be used to impersonate a Principal, this represents
 781 an additional security and privacy risk.

782 The Liberty Specifications do not mandate the use of cookies, but allows for an optional cookie-based mechanism
 783 which is used to simplify single sign-on. The information in this cookie is not a privacy risk since the only
 784 information revealed are the locations or websites at which the Principal authenticates. This particular cookie is
 785 referred to as the "common domain cookie" in the Liberty Specifications.

786 However, in addition to the common domain cookie, it is recognized that many websites, in order to provide a
 787 "seamless" user experience, will rely on the state management properties of cookies. Note that this issue is not
 788 specific to the Liberty Specifications. Any website that uses cookies for state management – with or without Liberty
 789 Specifications – is subject to the risks regarding the exposure of cookie contents. The actual risk depends on how the
 790 website constructs their cookies, the lifetime of the cookie, and the cookie contents. If a cookie were to present the
 791 above mentioned risks, an attacker would need to discover a software defect or have access to a Principal's computer

¹² John Kemp and Tom Wason, "ID-FF Bindings & Profiles Specification."

¹³ Jonathan Tourzan, "ID-WSF Architecture Overview." , ID-WSF Security and Privacy Guidelines and ID-WSF Security Profiles.

792 in order to exploit the vulnerability. Principals should normally have the opportunity and guidance necessary to
 793 decline cookies. For service offerings that are cookie dependent, care should be taken that the cookie does not collect
 794 or store PII.

795 **Cross Site Scripting** – Cross Site Scripting (CSS) was originally published as a CERT advisory [CSS] in February
 796 2000. To date this is still a very common threat and has been used to trick browsers to make incorrect trust decisions
 797 such as erroneously trusting malicious code.

798 A CSS vulnerability could potentially be used to collect HTTP cookies or the URL history and disseminate the data to
 799 an unauthorized party. Note that this is not an issue specific to the Liberty Specifications. Combining a CSS
 800 vulnerability with a social vulnerability could potentially fully compromise a user's accounts in a single sign-on
 801 environment. The CSS vulnerability is related to browser security and avoiding this problem requires changes in
 802 browsers' architecture, which is beyond the scope of the Liberty Alliance. However, Principals should be warned as to
 803 the potential CSS vulnerability and take necessary precautions, including being very selective and limiting their use of
 804 hyperlinks in emails or instant messages to only those communications from known or trusted senders.

805 **Related Documents/RDF** – The “Related Documents Feature” (RDF) implemented in both Netscape and Internet
 806 Explorer, “Smart Browsing/What’s Related” and “Show Related Documents” respectively, is known to be a very
 807 leaky channel. Essentially when the feature is enabled, the browser reports to the RDF service the referring URL and
 808 the URL to which the browser is being navigated. Like CSS, this vulnerability is inherent in the architecture of the
 809 browser. Principals should be warned of the potential for leakage and may wish to avoid the use of RDF in some
 810 circumstances.

811 8.3. Protocol Vulnerabilities

812 The Liberty Specifications were built on existing Internet technologies, meaning both browsers and protocols. The
 813 previous section discussed browser weaknesses. We now turn to protocol weaknesses. The core Internet protocols
 814 used whenever online include the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), the Internet Protocol version 4 (IP), the User
 815 Datagram Protocol (UDP) and the Domain Name System (DNS). When browsing the Web there is another layer of
 816 protocol with the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP). These protocols are insecure. They do not support
 817 fundamental security properties of integrity, confidentiality or authenticity. In the event that a website needs to
 818 securely communicate with the browser, the Transport Layer Security version 1.0 (TLS) or Secure Socket Layer
 819 version 3.0 (SSL) protocol is inserted in a layer between TCP/IP and HTTP. This combination yields the protocol
 820 scheme known as HTTPS.

821 The most common tool used to access Internet resources – and thus make use of the protocols mentioned above – is
 822 the web browser. Web browsers also have insecure aspects. The remainder of this section describes vulnerabilities of
 823 these protocols and browsers and the risks and threats they pose. Please note that the issues discussed herein are
 824 present whenever anyone browses the Internet – regardless of whether Liberty Specifications are being used.

825 **DNS** – A DNS server resolves the host names found in Uniform Resource Locators (URL) into a numeric Internet
 826 address. There are two well-known ways that DNS spoofing can occur, and both can result in a user connecting to a
 827 rogue site and mistakenly believing it is real.

828 First, there is no assurance in the protocol that replies to queries are genuine and have not been tampered with. It has
 829 been demonstrated that rogue DNS address records can contaminate the cache of an otherwise trusted resolver. The
 830 obvious threat this spoofing attack presents is that the peer host may end up connecting to the rogue site.

831 The second DNS vulnerability is the possibility of a compromised DNS server. If a DNS server is hijacked, then what
 832 seems to be legitimate address resolution may also result in the user connecting to a rogue website.

833 In both scenarios the user has no way of knowing that he/she is not communicating with the correct host. This
 834 contributes to the “spoofing” social vulnerability discussed above

835 To be more resilient to these sorts of attacks, deployers can utilize SSL server authentication via HTTPS. Generally
 836 the subject name in the public key certificate bears the domain name of the server, which should match the host name
 837 in the URL used for contacting the server. Thus, along with proper certificate path validation of the server domain

838 name from the certificate, one can verify that both that name and the host name in the URL indeed match, and are
 839 bona fide.¹⁴

840 Structural remedies for the DNS vulnerabilities are available but not widely deployed. The Domain Name System
 841 Security Extensions define extensions which integrity protect the records returned through the use of digital signatures.
 842 Also, the security extensions provide for the optional authentication of DNS protocol interactions.

843 **HTTP** – HTTP, the prevalent web protocol, makes extensive use of URLs. URLs have a syntax enabling the
 844 embedding of adjunct information. The Liberty Specification makes extensive use of this capability. At times, such
 845 embedded information may contain sensitive data. HTTP implementations must convey and consume URLs; thus the
 846 information embedded in a URL must be visible to the endpoints. Thus there are no provisions in HTTP for protecting
 847 such sensitive, URL-embedded information. Therefore, the onus is upon HTTP implementations – browsers and web
 848 servers – to avoid inadvertently disclosing this information. The Liberty Specifications recommend implementers
 849 protect the sensitive data carried in URLs. The recommended method to protect this information in transit is for the
 850 Service Provider to protect the sensitive relay state information. Since the Service Provider is both the producer and
 851 consumer of the relay state information, the Liberty Specifications do not mandate what specific cryptographic
 852 algorithms and primitives to use. The acquired data must be stored securely. URL leaks are discussed in more detail
 853 below.

854 **URL** – The Liberty Specifications may be used to convey sensitive information between parties in URLs. There are
 855 numerous methods in which referenced URLs can leak. For example, most browsers maintain a history of visited web
 856 addresses; browsers may report to the visited website the referring URL and most websites maintain logs of activity by
 857 capturing the URLs being requested as well as the referring URL. In addition, web proxy servers are deployed within
 858 intranets to facilitate passing web traffic through the corporate firewall, and proxy servers also maintain logs of the
 859 URLs requested. Finally, firewalls typically log traffic passing through them for auditing purposes. All of these
 860 retention points pose a risk if the data in the URL is sensitive and exposed to an unauthorized party.

861 In designing the Liberty Specifications, common-sense efforts were made to minimize the chance of disclosing the
 862 information conveyed in the URL to an unauthorized party. Liberty Specifications prescribe the following two
 863 recommendations:

864 First, the Liberty Specifications recommend that entry points and subsequent protocol exchanges be initiated over a
 865 secure communication transport, TLS or SSL, which implies the URLs should specify the HTTPS scheme. By
 866 following this guidance, sensitive information contained in URLs is available only at the points where it is produced,
 867 relayed (via the browser) and consumed. More simply stated, unauthorized observers cannot see the exchanged URLs
 868 and confidential information in them.

869 Second, the Liberty Specifications recommend that state information passed in the URL be integrity and
 870 confidentiality protected. This is a privacy enhancing measure that limits the exposure of the Principal's Service
 871 Provider activities. It also protects the Service Provider from initiating actions on behalf of the user if the state
 872 information were fabricated or tampered with.

873 **Network Time Protocol (NTP) Weaknesses** – Both the Liberty Specifications and the Security Assertion Markup
 874 Language version 1.0 specifications employ time-based mechanisms to qualify the validity of a message and the
 875 assertions they contain. This suggests that the clocks of participating systems are synchronized so that the validity
 876 periods can be accurately verified and honored. The time-based qualifiers may also be used as countermeasures
 877 against replay attack (described above). By enforcing the validity periods, we minimize the attackers window of
 878 opportunity. The smaller the time window between the generation of an assertion and its consumption, the better the
 879 security of the protocol. Therefore, if such a countermeasure is deployed, then it will be necessary to keep the clocks
 880 of the participating sites synchronized.

881 NTP is designed to keep the clocks of distributed systems synchronized. NTP is not a secure protocol and measures
 882 must be taken to prevent an attacker from disrupting the service. To defend against a rogue system influencing the
 883 synchronization process by broadcasting invalid time information, authentication and access controls should be used to

¹⁴ Procedures for performing such name matching, also known as a “server identity check,” are specified in C. Newman, 1999 and J. Hodges, R. Morgan, and M. Wahl, 2000.

884 limit potential synchronization sources. A more thorough coverage of this topic can be found in the Sun Blueprint
 885 Series.¹⁵

886 8.4. Summary

887 The Liberty Alliance developed a set of standards for single sign-on and federated network identity building on
 888 currently-deployed browsers. The vulnerabilities described above, from the serious ones of Cross-Site Scripting to the
 889 more arcane problems of Network Time Protocol, are problems of the underlying infrastructure. The Liberty Alliance
 890 has made every effort to provide secure standards, but the standards are built on top of insecure existing Internet
 891 protocols and, unavoidably, present potential vulnerabilities. This is not to suggest that the Liberty Specifications are
 892 insecure, but that implementations are dependent on all the underlying protocols. Thus, care should be taken in
 893 implementation and the Liberty Alliance Implementation Guidelines should be carefully followed.¹⁶

894 9. Terminology

895 Below please find a glossary of certain terms used throughout this document. For more information regarding Liberty
 896 terms, please see the Liberty Glossary.¹⁷

897 **Access control**

898 The act of mediating requested access to a resource based on privilege attributes of the requester and control attributes
 899 of the requested resource.

900 **Attribute**

901 A distinct characteristic of a Principal. A Principal's attributes are said to describe it.

902 **Attribute class**

903 A predefined set of attributes, such as the constituents of a Principal's name (prefix, first name, middle name, last
 904 name, and suffix). Liberty entities may standardize such classes.

905 **Attribute Provider (AP)**

906 The attribute provider (AP) provides ID-PP information. Sometimes called a ID-PP provider, the AP is an ID-WSF
 907 web service that hosts the ID-PP.

908 **Authentication**

909 The process of verifying the ability of a communication party to "talk" in the name of a Principal.

910 **Authentication Domain (AD)**

911 A formal community of Liberty-enabled entities that interact using a set of well-established common rules.

912 **Authentication session**

913 The period of time starting after A has authenticated B and until A stops trusting B's identity assertion and requires
 914 reauthentication. Also known as "session," it is the state between a successful login and a successful logout by the
 915 Principal.

916 **Authorization**

917 A right or a permission that is granted to a system entity to perform an action.

918 **Credentials**

919 Known data attesting to the truth of certain stated facts.

¹⁵ J. Hodges, R. Morgan, and M. Wahl, 2000.

¹⁶ Susan Landau, "Liberty Security and Privacy Overview."

¹⁷ Tom Wason, "Liberty Glossary."

929

Data

930

Any information that a Principal provides to an Identity Provider or a service provider.

931

932

Discovery Service (DS)

933

An entity that has the ability to direct attribute requesters to the relevant attribute provider who provides the requested classes of attributes for the specified Principal.

934

935

936

Federate

937

To link accounts at two or more entities together.

938

939

Federated architecture

940

An architecture that supports multiple entities provisioning Principals among peers within the Liberty Authentication Domain.

941

942

943

Federation

944

An association comprising any number of Service Providers and Identity Providers.

945

946

Identity

947

The essence of an entity, often described by its characteristics.

948

949

Identity federation

950

Associating, connecting, or binding multiple accounts for a given Principal at various Liberty-enabled entities within an Authentication Domain.

951

952

953

Identity Provider (IdP)

954

A Liberty-enabled entity that creates, maintains, and manages identity information for Principals and provides Principal authentication to other Service Providers within an Authentication Domain. An Identity Provider may also be a Service Provider.

955

956

957

Liberty-Enabled Provider

958

As used herein, and only herein, LEP may be either an Attribute Provider (AP), Discovery Service (DS), Service provider (SP), or Identity Provider (IdP) who collects, transfers, or receives the Personally Identifiable Information (PII) of a Principal.

959

960

Permission

961

Privileges granted to each user with respect to what data that the user is allowed to access and what menus options or commands he or she is allowed to use.

962

963

Personally Identifiable Information (PII)

964

Any data that identifies or locates a particular person, consisting primarily of name, address, telephone number, e-mail address, bank accounts, or other unique identifiers such as Social Security numbers.

965

966

Principal

967

A Principal is an entity that can acquire a federated identity, that is capable of making decisions, and to which authenticated actions are performed on its behalf. Examples of Principals include an individual user, a group of individuals, a corporation, other legal entities, or a component of the Liberty architecture.

968

969

Privacy

970

Proper handling of personal information throughout its life cycle, consistent with the preferences of the data subject.

971

972

Profile

973

Data comprising the broad set of attributes that may be maintained for an identity, over and beyond its identifiers and the data required to authenticate under that identity. At least some of those attributes (for example, addresses, preferences, card numbers) are provided by the Principal.

974

975

976

Rights Expression Languages (RELS)

986 A machine-based language that enables communication about usage directives. RELs allow an information provider
 987 to request intended uses of information before the information is exchanged and to designate approved uses for
 988 information exchanged during a particular transaction.

989
990 Service Provider (SP)

991 An entity that provides services and/or goods to Principals.
 992

993
994 Usage directives

995 Directives that specify the manner in which attributes can be used, stored, and disclosed.

996 **10. References**

997 BBB Online, Inc. and the Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc. "A Review of Federal and State Privacy
 998 Laws." http://www.bbbonline.org/UnderstandingPrivacy/library/fed_statePrivLaws.pdf (accessed April 11,
 999 2003).

1000 Berman, J., and D. Mulligan. "Privacy in the Digital Age: Work in Progress." 23 Nova Law Review 2 1999.
 1001 <http://www.cdt.org/publications/lawreview/1999nova.shtml>.

1002 Canadian Parliament. Canadian Privacy Act. S.C. 2000, c.5 (2003).

1003 Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, eds. (19 July 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification," Version
 1004 1.2-13, Liberty Alliance Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1005 CDT Web Site. "Privacy Basics: Fair Information Practices." <http://www.cdt.org/privacy/guide/basic/fips.html>
 1006 (accessed August 6, 2003).

1007 Center for Democracy and Technology (CDT) Web Site. "Data Privacy." <http://www.cdt.org/privacy> (accessed
 1008 August 6, 2003).

1009 Ellison, Gary, ed. (25 July 2003) "Liberty ID-WSF Security Mechanisms," Version 1.0-17, Liberty Alliance
 1010 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1011 European Parliament and the Council of 12 July 2002. Directive 2002/58/EC on privacy and electronic
 1012 communications.
http://europa.eu.int/smartapi/cgi/sga_doc?smartapi!celexapi!prod!CELEXnumdoc&lg=en&numdoc=32002L0058&model=guichett (accessed April 11, 2003).

1015 European Parliament and the Council of 24 October 1995. Directive 95/46/EC on data protection.
 1016 http://www.privacy.org/pi/intl_orgs/ec/eupd.html (accessed April 11, 2003).

1017 GBDe. "Personal Data Privacy Protection Guidelines." <http://www.gbde.org/privacy1.html> (accessed August 6,
 1018 2003).

1019 Hi-Ethics Web Site. www.hi-ethics.org (accessed April 2003).

1020 Hi-Ethics. "Health Internet Ethics: Ethical Principles For Offering Internet Health Services to Consumers."
 1021 <http://www.hi-ethics.org/Principles/index.asp> (accessed April 2003).

1022 Hodges, J., R. Morgan, and M. Wahl. "Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (v3): Extension for Transport
 1023 Layer Security." May 2000. <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2830.txt> (accessed April 11, 2003).

1024 Hodges, Jeff, ed. (October 11, 2002). "Version 1.0 Errata." Version 1.0, Liberty Alliance Project.
 1025 http://www.projectliberty.org/specs/archive/v1_0/draft-liberty-version-1-errata-00.pdf.

1026 International Security, Trust and Privacy Alliance (ISTPA). "Privacy Framework v.1.1." <http://www.istpa.org/>
 1027 (accessed April 11, 2003).

1028 Kemp, John , Wason, Tom, eds. (25 July 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification," Version
 1029 1.2-14, Liberty Alliance Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1030 Landau, Susan, ed. (24 July 2003). "Liberty ID-WSF Security and Privacy Overview," Draft version 1.0-09,
 1031 Liberty Alliance Project.

LIBERTY ALLIANCE PROJECT
Privacy and Security Best Practices

Version 2.0

1032 Liberty Alliance. "Security Bulletin." October 10, 2002,
1033 http://www.projectliberty.org/specs/archive/v1_0/security_bulletin.html.

1034 Linn, John, ed. (25 July 2003). "Liberty Trust Models Guidelines," Draft version 1.0-07, Liberty Alliance
1035 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1036 Madsen, Paul , ed. (25 July 2003). "Liberty Authentication Context Specification," Version 1.2-07, Liberty
1037 Alliance Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1038 NAI. "Self-Regulatory Principles." http://www.networkadvertising.org/aboutnai_principles.asp (accessed April
1039 2003).

1040 Newman, C. "Using TLS with IMAP, POP3 and ACAP." RFC 2595, June 1999. <http://www.isi.edu/in->
1041 notes/rfc2595.txt (accessed April 11, 2003).

1042 OECD. "OECD Guidelines for the Security of Information Systems and Networks: Towards a Culture of
1043 Security." <http://www.oecd.org/pdf/M00033000/M00033182.pdf> (accessed April 11, 2003).

1044 OPA. "Guidelines for Online Privacy Policies." <http://www.privacyalliance.org/resources/ppguidelines.shtml>
1045 (accessed April 2003).

1046 Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD). Web Pages regarding privacy and security
1047 concerns. <http://www.oecd.org/EN/home/0,,EN-home-43-1-no-no-no-43,00.html> (accessed April 2003).

1048 Privacy International, "Privacy and Human Rights: An International Survey of Privacy Laws and Developments,
1049 2002." <http://www.privacyinternational.org/survey/phr2002/> (accessed April 2003).

1050 The Global Business Dialogue on Electronic Commerce (GBDe) Web Site. <http://www.gbde.org/gbde2003.html>
1051 (accessed August 6, 2003).

1052 The Network Advertising Initiative (NAI) Web Site. <http://www.networkadvertising.org/> (accessed April 2003).

1053 The Online Privacy Alliance (OPA) Web Site. <http://www.privacyalliance.org/> (accessed April 2003).

1054 U.S. Federal Trade Commission Advisory Committee. "Final Report on Online Access and Security." (2000)
1055 <http://www3.ftc.gov/acoas/papers/acoasdraft1.htm> (accessed April 11, 2003).

1056 USCA. 15 U.S.C.A. § 6501 (2000); 15 U.S.C.A. § 6801 et. seq. (1999); 42 U.S.C.A. §§ 1320(d) et. seq. (1996);
1057 15 U.S.C.A. § 45(a) (2000).

1058 Wason, Thomas, ed. (06 August 2003). "Liberty Architecture Glossary," Version 1.2-09, Liberty Alliance
1059 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1060 Wason, Thomas, ed. (25 July 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview," Version 1.2-03, Liberty Alliance
1061 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1062 Wason, Tom, ed. (14 Apr 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines," Version 1.2-08, Liberty Alliance
1063 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

1064 Weitzel, David, ed. (August 1, 2003). "Liberty ID-WSF Implementation Guide," Version 1.0-01, Liberty Alliance
1065 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

Exhibit A

**IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE**

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS)
MACHINES CORPORATION,)
)
Plaintiff,)
) Civil Action No. 16-122-LPS
v.)
) **JURY TRIAL DEMANDED**
GROUPON, INC.,)
)
Defendant.)
)

**SECOND AMENDED IDENTIFICATION OF PREVIOUSLY DISCLOSED
AUTHENTICATION OBJECTIONS**

Pursuant to the Court’s Order, *see* D.I. 323, Plaintiff International Business Machines Corporation (“IBM”) makes the following identification of previously disclosed authentication objections to documents on Defendant Groupon, Inc.’s (“Groupon”) trial exhibit list. This identification is specific to IBM’s previously identified authenticity objections to documents on Groupon Exhibit List and does not waive or limit IBM’s other objections, including objections on other grounds, objections to other exhibits, and objections to inaccurate descriptions. IBM reserves the right to clarify, amend, modify, and supplement the information contained in these disclosures, including based on further discussions between the parties to narrow the issues before the Court.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0022	Iyengar Dep. Ex. 3 - Excerpt from Spinning the Web, Yuval Fisher (1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of portions of a book purportedly released in 1996, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0029	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 5 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - All Nashville Deals & Coupons (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0030	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 6 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - Jiffy Lube - Up To 47% Off - Madison, TN (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0031	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 7 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - Groupon Goods - Toys, Electronics, Clothing & More! Save on All You Need with Groupon (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0032	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 8 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - Deals and Coupons for Restaurants, Fitness, Travel, Shopping, Beauty, and more (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0033	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 9 - Source for website - https://www.groupon.com/browse/nashville?context=local (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0057	Give Me Liberty . . . (06/01/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in June of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0058	HTML and CGI Unleashed (Contents of CD) (01/01/1995)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this CD was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this material is a true and accurate copy of a CD allegedly

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		provided with "HTML and CGI Unleashed" allegedly released in January of 1995. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0063	Novell Debuts New digitalme 'In- the-Net' Service (10/05/1999)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a press release purportedly from October of 1999, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0067	Shibboleth-Architecture DRAFT v05 (05/02/2002)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from May of 2002, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document is marked as a draft.
DX-0094	Domain Delphi: Retrieving Documents Online (04/01/1986)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in April of 1986, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0107	The Xerox Star: A Retrospective (09/01/1989)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in September of 1989, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0148	Liberty Technical Glossary, version 1.3 (12/14/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0149	Liberty Metadata Description and Discovery Specification, version 2.0-02 (12/14/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Further, while Groupon claims this document is

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		version 2.0-02, the exhibit is marked as a DRAFT.
DX-0150	Liberty ID-FF Authentication Context Specification, version 1.2 (12/14/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0151	Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines, version 1.2 (04/18/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in April of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0152	Bindings and Profiles for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML), version 1.1, OASIS Standard (09/02/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in September of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0157	Advertising on Videotex: What We've Learned (1984)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly from 1984, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0160	The Architecture of Videotex Systems (01/01/1983)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1983, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0162	CompuServe Information Manager (“CIM”)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0163	CompuServe Navigator User’s Guide (01/01/1988)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a user guide purportedly from January of 1998, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0164	CompuServe User's Guide - Information Manager for Windows	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0165	CSNavBrochure 08-1988	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document purportedly from August of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0167	HTML & CGI – Unleashed	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0177	NAPLPS: Beyond Videotex	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		accurate copy, nor that has remained unchanged, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The document appears to be an excerpt from an unidentified larger document and it is unclear whether this is an entire article.
DX-0195	Library of Congress Record for The Complete HyperCard Handbook by Danny Goodman (08/03/1987)	Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects.
DX-0196	Library of Congress Record for Danny Goodman's HyperCard's Guide (06/01/1988)	Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects. And as IBM previously showed, the dates are in conflict. <i>See D.I. 288 at 2-3.</i>
DX-0197	Library of Congress Record for Hypercard Made Easy by William Sanders (07/08/1988)	Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects. And as IBM previously showed, the evidence shows there is no such link. <i>See D.I. 288 at 1.</i>
DX-0202	Weissman Dep. Ex. 27 - Amazon Source Code excerpt	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		<p>did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The only witness with knowledge of Amazon's source code testified as follows: "I'm backing up and saying, even if you ask me this about 1995, when I did work there, I would not be able to prove to you that the source code marked all -- I think as "all files" something '95, that I couldn't prove to you that that was used on the web server."</p> <p>(Davis, Paul, 94:24-95:9, Nov. 16, 2017)</p>
DX-0203	Library of Congress Copyright Office Catalog record for Unleashed	<p>Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects.</p>
DX-0204	Library of Congress Copyright Office Catalog record for Spinning the Web	<p>Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects.</p>
DX-0290	IBM v NYSE v NASDAQ Screenshot CapIQ.PNG	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Moreover, there are no indications of the origins of this image.</p>

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0331	GRPN v GOOGL v AMZN v FB Screenshot CapIQ.PNG	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Moreover, there are no indications of the origins of this image.
DX-0339	KMS: A Distributed Hypermedia System for Managing Knowledge In Organizations (11/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from November of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0343	An Information System Based on Distributed Objects (10/04/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in October of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Further, Groupon's description claims a date of 10/4/1987 while the document itself lists dates of 10/4-8/1987. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0344	Object-oriented GUI application development (01/01/1993)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1983, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0348	Design and Implementation of An Electronic Special Interest Magazine (01/01/1985)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from January of 1985, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0350	The Power of NAPLPS: Beyond Videotex (01/01/1985)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0351	Weissman Dep. Ex. 17 - Apple Macintosh HyperCard User's Guide (01/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of whether or how this document was kept, or showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1987.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0352	The Complete HyperCard Handbook (01/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0353	Weissman Dep. Ex. 18 - HyperCard Developer's Guide (01/01/1988)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0354	Weissman Dep. Ex. 20 - HyperCard Made Easy (01/01/1988)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0356	Weissman Dep. Ex. 23 - Designing the Star User Interface (04/01/1982)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		accurate copy of a paper purportedly from April of 1982, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0357	Weissman Dep. Ex. 28 - The star user interface: an overview (01/01/1982)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from January of 1982, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0359	IBM, Sears shooting for '88 entry; New life for videotex (04/06/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in April of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document does not even purport to be the original format of any document.
DX-0360	Trintex Signs up 42 Advertising Clients; Is Hoping for Launch in Early '88, VP Says, (06/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in June of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document does not even purport to be the original format of any document and appears to omit at least an image.
DX-0363	Trintex to Aim On-Line Ads At Demographic Segments (06/30/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in June of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document does not even purport to be the original format of any document.
DX-0366	Videotex / Teletext: Principles & Practices (01/01/1985)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1985, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0367	Sears IBM Near a Deal to Sell Prodigy (05/08/1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in May of 1996, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0368	Wall Street IBM, Sears to Sell Prodigy for Less Than \$200 Million (05/08/1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in May of 1996, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0371	The HTML Sourcebook	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy, nor that has remained unchanged, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0372	Web*-A Technology to Make Information Available on the Web (04/01/1995)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in April of 1995, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0373	Excerpt of HTML and CGI Unleashed (01/01/1995)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1995, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0374	Spinning the Web (01/01/1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1983, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0375	Physical Exhibit: AllFilesJune1995 - Amazon.com source code	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The only witness with knowledge

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		<p>of Amazon's source code testified as follows: "I'm backing up and saying, even if you ask me this about 1995, when I did work there, I would not be able to prove to you that the source code marked all -- I think as "all files" something '95, that I couldn't prove to you that that was used on the web server."</p> <p>(Davis, Paul, 94:24-95:9, Nov. 16, 2017)</p>
DX-0376	Physical Exhibit: AllFilesJune1996 - Amazon.com source code	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The one witness who has testified about Amazon testified as follows: "Q. Okay. And you cannot say for certain whether the 'all files June 1996' source code repository actually contains the source code that was running on Amazon's website in June of 1996, correct? A. I -- no, it's not possible -- not possible for me to state that."</p> <p>(Davis, Paul, 85:6-85:12, Nov. 16, 2017)</p>
DX-0380	Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview, version 1.2-errata-v1.0	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and</p>

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper from the Liberty Alliance Project, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0381	Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification, version 1.2-errata-v2.0 (12/14/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0382	Liberty ID-FF Bindings and 962 Profiles Specification, version 1.2-errata-v2.0 (09/12/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in September of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0383	Privacy and Security Best Practices, version 2.0 (11/12/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper from the Liberty Alliance Project, nor that has remained unchanged since

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0390	Google authentication Source Code	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0394	Weissman Dep. Ex. 19 - The Complete HyperCard Handbook by Danny Goodman, Expanded 2nd Edition (01/01/1988)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0442	Excerpt of Spinning the Web (10/06/2017)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in October of 2017, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0444	"Prodigy makes the home computer a tool for shopping, travel, banking, education—	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
	and more," by Stanley L. Englehardt, THINK No. 2 (01/01/1989)	was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in January of 1989, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0483	Prodigy Trintex articles	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Though this document was produced by IBM, it was provided to IBM by a third party in a context that provides no support for its authenticity.
DX-0638	http://www.json.org/	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0639	(04/01/2014)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0640	https://mustache.github.io/mustache.1.html (02/01/2014)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0641	https://developers.facebook.com/docs/facebook-login/permissions/v3.0#reference-public_profile (01/01/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0642	https://developers.google.com/identity/sign-in/web/server-side-flow#implementing_the_one-time-code_flow (10/13/2017)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0643	HyperCard Made Easy (1st ed.)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		accurate copy, nor that has remained unchanged, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0645	Hinton Dep. Ex. 4- Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview, version 1.2 (11/12/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from November of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0646	Hinton Dep. Ex. 5 - Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification, version 1.2 (11/12/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in November of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0647	Hinton Dep. Ex. 6 - Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification, version 1.2 (11/12/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in November of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0666	“A Security Architecture for Computational Grids” by Ian Foster et al. (1998)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in 1998, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.

DATED: July 8, 2018

/s/ *Edward Geist*

OF COUNSEL:

John M. Desmarais
 Karim Z. Oussayef
 Laurie Stempler
 Edward Geist
 Robert C. Harrits
 Brian D. Matty
 Michael Matulewicz-Crowley
 DESMARAIS LLP
 230 Park Avenue
 New York, NY 10169
 Tel: (212) 351-3400

David E. Moore (#3983)
 Bindu A. Palapura (#5370)
 POTTER ANDERSON & CORROON LLP
 Hercules Plaza, 6th Floor
 1313 N. Market Street
 Wilmington, DE 19801
 Tel: (302) 984-6000
 dmoore@potteranderson.com
 bpalapura@potteranderson.com

*Attorneys for Plaintiff
 International Business Machines Corporation*